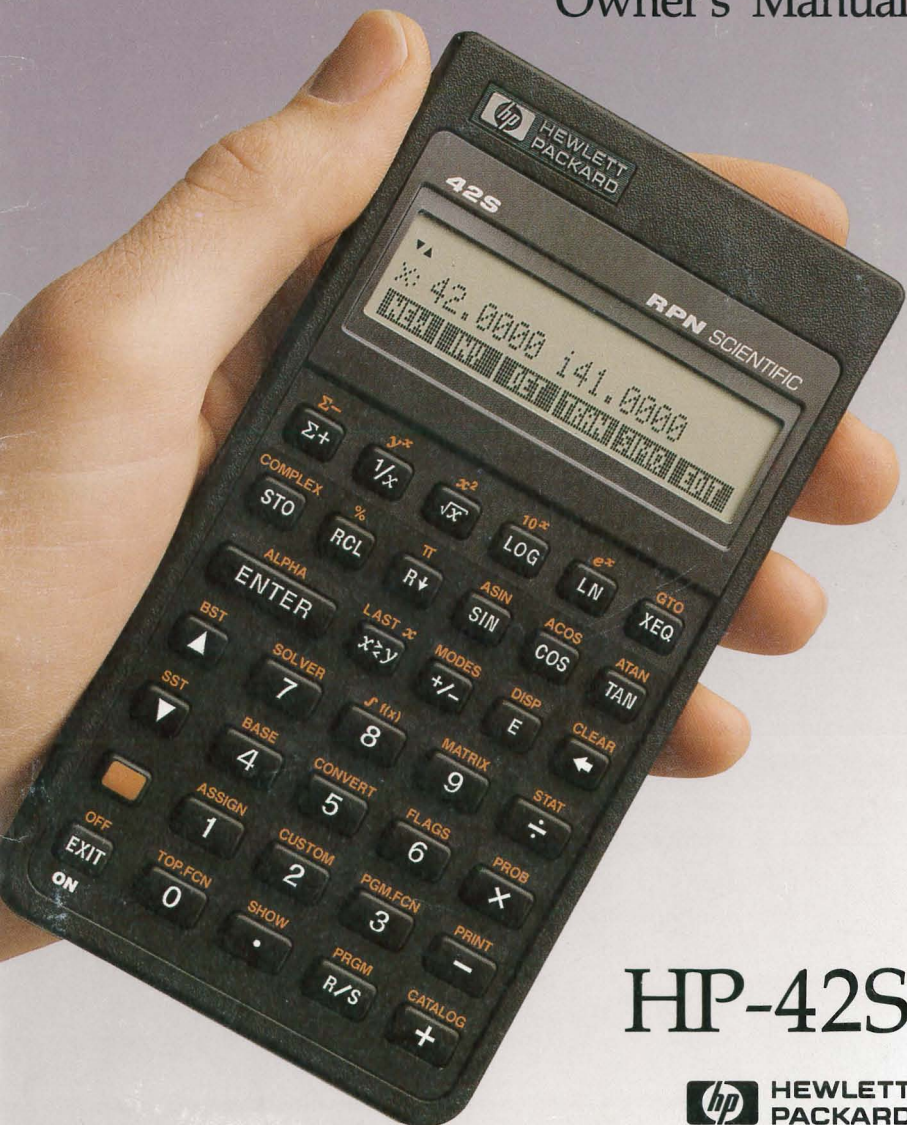


# HEWLETT-PACKARD

## RPN Scientific Calculator

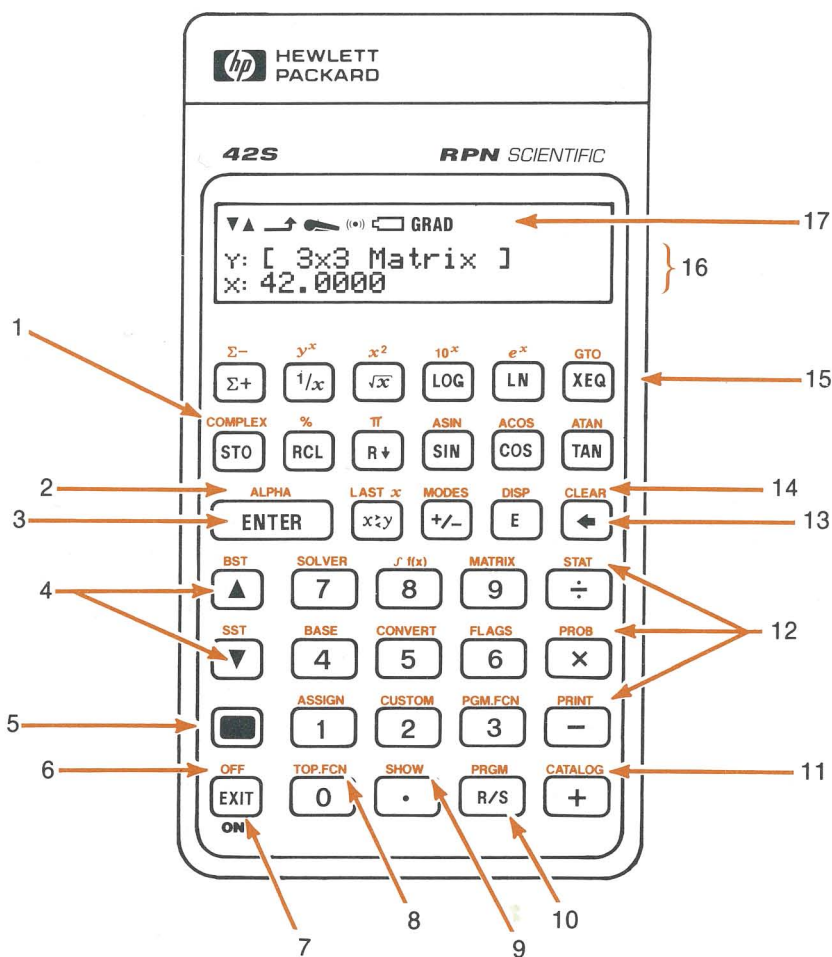
---

### Owner's Manual



# HP-42S

 **HEWLETT  
PACKARD**



1. Converts to/from complex numbers.
2. Menu for typing characters.
3. Enters a number.
4. Moves up/down through a menu or program.
5. Shift key.
6. Calculator OFF.
7. Exits current menu or mode.
8. Top-row functions.
9. Shows full precision of number.
10. Run/stop program.
11. Catalogs of functions, programs, and variables.
12. Menu-selection keys.
13. Backspace.
14. Functions for clearing.
15. Menu keys (top row).
16. Two-line display.
17. Display annunciators.



# HEWLETT-PACKARD

## For Your HP-42S:

## An Invisible Link for Visible Results

An added bonus to using the HP-42S is seeing your work on paper. The HP Infrared Printer (82240A) will print all your steps as you work or only what you tell it to.

The printer is cordless – infrared signals make the print connection. No cords clutter your workspace. Four AA alkaline batteries give the HP Infrared Printer go-anywhere portability. Or, to extend battery life, plug in the optional AC adapter.

### Accessories

#### Printer Adapters

U.S./Canada	82241A
Japan	82241AJ
Europe	82241AB
UK	82241AU
Australia	82241AG

#### Thermal Printing Paper

Black printing, 82175A  
6 rolls per box

#### Leather Cases

##### For the HP-42S

Black	92169K
Brown	92169L
Burgundy	92169M

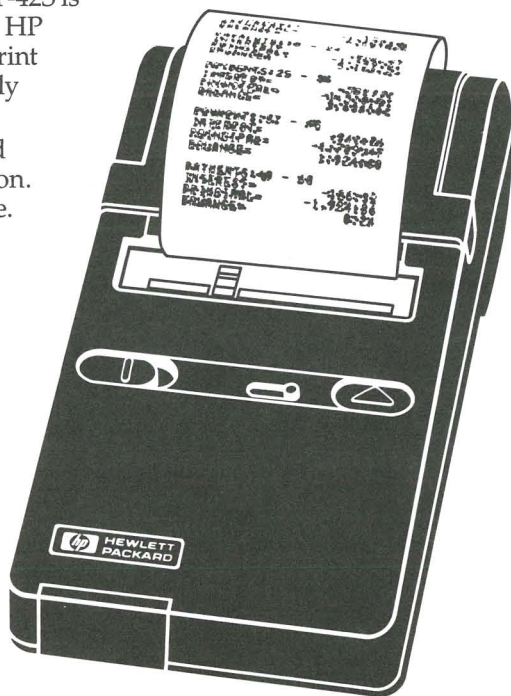
##### For the HP Infrared Printer

Black	92169G
Brown	92169H
Burgundy	92169J

### Application Book for the HP-42S

*Programming Examples and Techniques*  
(00042-90020)

- Solving problems in science, engineering and business with these built-in applications:
  - the equation-solving function
  - integration
  - matrices
  - statistics
- Using the equation-solving and integration functions in programs
- Enhancing HP-41 programs for the HP-42S (with examples)
- Building plots and graphics with the HP-42S
- Printing plots and graphics with the HP Infrared Printer



## For More Information

**In the U.S.A.,** visit your nearest HP dealer for additional information on calculator accessories or a demonstration of Hewlett-Packard professional calculators. For the location and number of the dealer nearest you, call toll-free 800-752-0900.

For items your local dealer does not carry, and for information about availability and prices of accessories for calculators which are no longer in production, call toll-free 800-538-8787. Please refer to Call Code P280 when ordering. MasterCard, Visa and American Express cards are welcome.

**Outside the U.S.A.,** contact your local HP sales office. It is listed in your telephone directory.

### **U.S.A.:**

Hewlett-Packard Co.  
Corvallis Division  
1000 NE Circle Blvd.  
Corvallis, OR 97330

### **Canada:**

Hewlett-Packard (Canada) Ltd.  
6877 Goreway Drive  
Mississauga, Ontario  
L4V 1M8

### **Europe, North Africa, Middle East:**

Hewlett-Packard S.A.  
7, rue du Bois-du Lan  
P.O. Box 364  
CH-1217 Meyrin 1  
Geneva  
Switzerland

### **Other countries:**

Hewlett-Packard Intercontinental  
3495 Deer Creek Road  
Palo Alto, California 94304  
U.S.A.

### **Hewlett-Packard Corporate Offices**

3000 Hanover Street  
Palo Alto, California 94304  
U.S.A.

**Note:** Product availability subject to change without notice.



**HEWLETT  
PACKARD**

# Help Us Help You!

By taking a moment to fill out this card, you can help HP to better understand your needs. Please read all questions first, then fill them out. Thank you.

## HELP US HELP YOU!

**Model: HP-42S**      Date acquired \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip \_\_\_\_\_

Age \_\_\_\_\_ Phone (\_\_\_\_\_) \_\_\_\_\_ Business \_\_\_\_ or Home \_\_\_\_

**1. What is your POSITION OR OCCUPATION? (Please check only one)**

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 101 <input type="checkbox"/> Student              | 105 <input type="checkbox"/> Top Manager          | 109 <input type="checkbox"/> Independent, self-employed |
| 102 <input type="checkbox"/> Educator, Researcher | 106 <input type="checkbox"/> Owner, Principal, VP | 110 <input type="checkbox"/> Retired                    |
| 103 <input type="checkbox"/> Professional Staff   | 107 <input type="checkbox"/> Field Agent, Rep     | 111 <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____                |
| 104 <input type="checkbox"/> Middle Manager       | 108 <input type="checkbox"/> Technician           |   |

**2. What is your AREA OF ACTIVITY or FIELD OF WORK/STUDY? (Please check only one)**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 201 <input type="checkbox"/> Mechanical Engineering  | 209 <input type="checkbox"/> Purchasing, Scheduling, Inventory Cntrl. |
| 202 <input type="checkbox"/> Civil Engineering       | 210 <input type="checkbox"/> Accounting, Auditing                     |
| 203 <input type="checkbox"/> Electrical Engineering  | 211 <input type="checkbox"/> Finance, Investment Analysis             |
| 204 <input type="checkbox"/> Chemical Engineering    | 212 <input type="checkbox"/> General Administration/Management        |
| 205 <input type="checkbox"/> Other Engineering _____ | 213 <input type="checkbox"/> Marketing                                |
| 206 <input type="checkbox"/> Surveying               | 214 <input type="checkbox"/> Sales                                    |
| 207 <input type="checkbox"/> Data Processing         | 215 <input type="checkbox"/> Customer Service, Maintenance            |
| 208 <input type="checkbox"/> Quality Control         | 216 <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____                              |

**3. In what INDUSTRY do you work? (Skip if Student or Retired. Please check only one)**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 301 <input type="checkbox"/> Education                         | 310 <input type="checkbox"/> Chemical, Refining                |
| 302 <input type="checkbox"/> Banking, Finance, Investment      | 311 <input type="checkbox"/> Agriculture, Forestry, Livestock  |
| 303 <input type="checkbox"/> Insurance                         | 312 <input type="checkbox"/> Food Processing/Distribution      |
| 304 <input type="checkbox"/> Real Estate                       | 313 <input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturing Industrial Goods    |
| 305 <input type="checkbox"/> Business/Consulting Services      | 314 <input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturing Consumer Goods      |
| 306 <input type="checkbox"/> Technical Consulting              | 315 <input type="checkbox"/> Transportation                    |
| 307 <input type="checkbox"/> Software, Computer Services       | 316 <input type="checkbox"/> Communication, Utilities          |
| 308 <input type="checkbox"/> Construction, Architectural       | 317 <input type="checkbox"/> Public Admin./Government/Military |
| 309 <input type="checkbox"/> Mining, Oil Drilling, Exploration | 318 <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____                       |

**4. Where did you purchase your HP calculator? (Please check only one)**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 401 <input type="checkbox"/> Retail Computer Store  | 407 <input type="checkbox"/> Mail Order                  |
| 402 <input type="checkbox"/> Office Equipment Store | 408 <input type="checkbox"/> Specialty Store             |
| 403 <input type="checkbox"/> Bookstore              | 409 <input type="checkbox"/> Purchased by Company/School |
| 404 <input type="checkbox"/> Department Store       | 410 <input type="checkbox"/> Directly from HP            |
| 406 <input type="checkbox"/> Catalog Store          | 411 <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____                 |

**5. How did you first hear about this model?**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 501 <input type="checkbox"/> Previous HP Owner                        | 505 <input type="checkbox"/> Direct Mail                     |
| 502 <input type="checkbox"/> Advice of Friends, Colleagues, Professor | 506 <input type="checkbox"/> Salesperson                     |
| 503 <input type="checkbox"/> Magazine or Newspaper Advertising        | 507 <input type="checkbox"/> Brochure or In-Store Literature |
| 504 <input type="checkbox"/> Press Articles                           | 508 <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____                     |





# BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 35 CORVALLIS, OR

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY  
INQUIRIES DEPARTMENT  
1000 NE CIRCLE BLVD.  
CORVALLIS OR 97330-9988

NO POSTAGE  
NECESSARY  
IF MAILED  
IN THE  
UNITED STATES



# Comments on the HP-42S Owner's Manual

---

We welcome your evaluation of this manual. Your comments and suggestions help us improve our publications.

## HP-42S Owner's Manual

Printing date of the manual (from the title page) \_\_\_\_\_

Please circle a response for each of the statements below. You can use the **Comments** space to provide additional opinions.

1=Strongly Agree      4=Disagree  
2=Agree                5=Strongly Disagree  
3=Neutral

- |  |   |   |   |   |   |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|-----------|-----------|-------|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| ■ The manual is well organized.  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ I can find the information I want.                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ The information in the manual is accurate.                           | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ I can easily understand the instructions.                            | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ The manual contains enough examples.                                 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ The examples are appropriate and helpful.                            | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ The layout and format are attractive and useful.                     | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ The illustrations are clear and helpful.                             | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ The manual length is:      too long      appropriate      too short. |   |   |   |   |   |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ■ The chapter(s) and appendixes I refer to most frequently are:        |   |   |   |   |   |           |           |       |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Chapters   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6         | 7         | 8     | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| Appendixes   | A | B | C | D | E | Menu Maps | Operation | Index |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |

**Comments:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
City/State/Zip: \_\_\_\_\_  
Occupation: \_\_\_\_\_



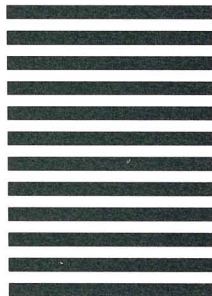
# BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 38 CORVALLIS, OR

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY  
DOCUMENTATION DEPARTMENT  
CORVALLIS DIVISION  
1000 NE CIRCLE BLVD.  
CORVALLIS OR 97330-9988

NO POSTAGE  
NECESSARY  
IF MAILED  
IN THE  
UNITED STATES





# HP-42S

---

## Owner's Manual



Edition 3 March 1989  
Reorder Number 00042-90001

---

# Notice

For warranty and regulatory information for this calculator, see pages 262 and 265. This manual and any keystroke programs contained herein are provided “as is” and are subject to change without notice. **Hewlett-Packard Company makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this material or the keystroke programs contained herein, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose.** Hewlett- Packard Co. shall not be liable for errors or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual or the keystroke programs contained herein.

© Hewlett-Packard Co. 1988. All rights reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation of this manual, including any programs, is prohibited without prior written permission of Hewlett-Packard Company, except as allowed under the copyright laws. Hewlett-Packard Company grants you the right to use any program contained in this manual in this Hewlett-Packard calculator.

The programs that control your calculator are copyrighted and all rights are reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation of those programs without prior written permission of Hewlett-Packard Co. is also prohibited.

Corvallis Division  
1000 N.E. Circle Blvd.  
Corvallis, OR 97330, U.S.A.

---

# Printing History

Edition 1	June 1988	Mfg. No. 00042-90002
Edition 2	October 1988	Mfg. No. 00042-90040
Edition 3	March 1989	Mfg. No. 00042-90054

# Welcome to the HP-42S

---

Your HP-42S reflects the superior quality and attention to detail in engineering and manufacturing that have distinguished Hewlett-Packard products for nearly 50 years. Hewlett-Packard stands behind this calculator: we offer accessories, worldwide service, and expertise to support its use (see inside the back cover).

---

## Hewlett-Packard Quality

Our calculators are made to excel, to last, and to be easy to use.

- This calculator is designed to withstand the usual drops, vibrations, pollutants (smog, ozone), temperature extremes, and humidity variations that it may encounter in normal, everyday worklife.
- The calculator and its manual have been designed and tested for ease of use. We selected spiral binding to let the manual stay open to any page, and we added many examples to highlight the varied uses of this calculator.
- Advanced materials and permanent, molded key lettering provide a long keyboard life and a positive feel to the keyboard.
- CMOS (low-power) electronics and the liquid-crystal display allow the HP-42S to retain data while it is off and let the batteries last a long time.
- The microprocessor has been optimized for fast and reliable computations. The calculator uses 15 digits internally, then rounds to 12 digits for precise results.
- Extensive research has created a design that has minimized the adverse effects of static electricity, a potential cause of malfunctions and data loss in calculators.



---

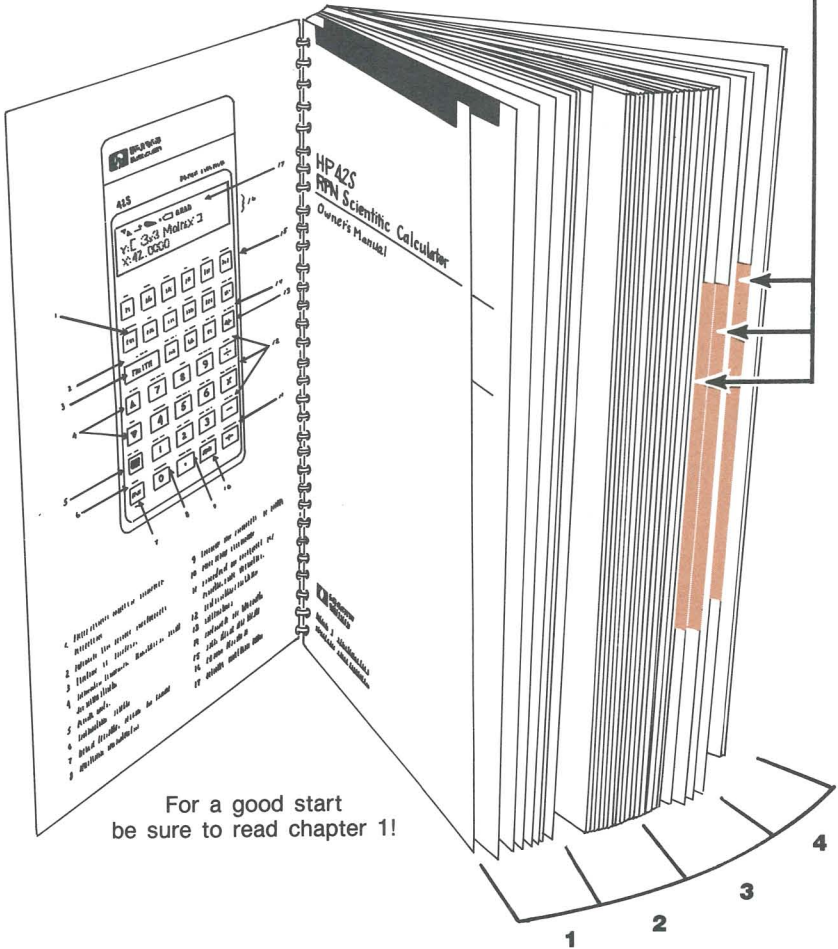
## Features

The feature set of this calculator reflects needs and wishes we solicited from customers. The HP-42S features:

- Built-in applications:
  - A solver (root finder) that can solve for any variable in an equation.
  - Numeric integration for calculating definite integrals.
  - Matrix operations, including a Matrix Editor, a solver for simultaneous linear equations, and many other useful matrix functions.
  - Statistical operations, including curve fitting and forecasting.
  - Base conversions, integer arithmetic, and binary manipulation of hexadecimal, decimal, octal, and binary numbers.
- Complex numbers and vector functions.
- Graphic display control functions.
- Menus that can be customized.
- The ability to run programs written for the HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators.
- Over 7,200 bytes of memory for storing programs and data.
- An infrared printer port for printing calculations, programs, data, and graphics using the HP 82240A Infrared Printer.
- Catalogs for reviewing and using items stored in memory.
- An easy-to-use menu system that uses the bottom line of the display to label the top row of keys.
- Reverse Polish Notation (*RPN*) operating logic for the most efficient solutions to complicated problems.
- Keystroke programming with branching, looping, tests, and flags.
- A two-line, 22-character, alphanumeric display with adjustable contrast.



**Menu Maps**  
**Operation Index**  
**Subject Index**



- Part 1: Basic Operation**
- Part 2: Programming**
- Part 3: Built-In Applications**
- Part 4: Appendixes and Reference**



# Contents

---

## Part 1: Basic Operation

<b>1</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>
	<b>18</b>	Important Preliminaries
	<b>18</b>	Power On and Off; Continuous Memory
	<b>19</b>	Regular and Shifted Keystrokes
	<b>19</b>	Annunciators
	<b>20</b>	Adjusting the Display Contrast
	<b>20</b>	Using Menus
	<b>21</b>	Displaying a Menu
	<b>23</b>	Multirow Menus (▼▲)
	<b>23</b>	Submenus and <b>EXIT</b>
	<b>25</b>	Clearing the Calculator
	<b>25</b>	Using the <b>◀</b> Key
	<b>26</b>	The <b>CLEAR</b> Menu
	<b>26</b>	Clearing All Programs and Data
	<b>27</b>	Errors and Messages
	<b>27</b>	Keying In Numbers
	<b>27</b>	Making Numbers Negative
	<b>27</b>	Exponents of Ten
	<b>28</b>	Understanding Digit Entry
	<b>28</b>	Simple Arithmetic
	<b>29</b>	One-Number Functions
	<b>30</b>	Two-Number Functions
	<b>31</b>	Chain Calculations
	<b>33</b>	Exercises: Calculations for Practice
	<b>33</b>	Range of Numbers
	<b>34</b>	Changing the Display Format
	<b>34</b>	Number of Decimal Places
	<b>36</b>	Selecting the Radix Mark (Comma vs. Period)
	<b>36</b>	Showing All 12 Digits

- 37 Keying In Alphanumeric Data
- 37 Using the ALPHA Menu
- 38 The Alpha Display and the Alpha Register
- 40 Catalogs
- 41 An Introduction to Flags

## 2

- 42 **The Automatic Memory Stack**
- 42 What the Stack Is
- 43 The Stack and the Display
- 44 Reviewing the Stack (**R↓**)
- 44 Exchanging  $x$  and  $y$  (**x↔y**)
- 45 Arithmetic—How the Stack Does It
- 46 How **ENTER** Works
- 48 How CLX Works
- 48 The LAST X Register
- 49 Using **LASTx** To Correct Mistakes
- 50 Using **LASTx** To Reuse Numbers
- 52 Chain Calculations
- 52 Order of Calculation
- 53 Exercises: More RPN Calculations

## 3

- 55 **Variables and Storage Registers**
- 55 Storing and Recalling Data
- 56 Variables
- 57 Storage Registers
- 58 Storing and Recalling Stack Registers
- 60 Data Types
- 61 Arithmetic With **STO** and **RCL**
- 62 Managing Variables
- 62 Clearing Variables
- 62 Using the Variable Catalogs
- 63 Printing Variables
- 63 Managing Storage Registers
- 64 Changing the Number of Storage Registers (SIZE)
- 64 Clearing Storage Registers
- 64 Printing Storage Registers
- 65 Storing and Recalling Alpha Data
- 65 Storing Alpha Data (ASTO)
- 66 Recalling Alpha Data (ARCL)

<b>4</b>	<b>67</b>	<b>Executing Functions</b>
	<b>67</b>	Using the Function Catalog
	<b>68</b>	Using the CUSTOM Menu
	<b>68</b>	Making CUSTOM Menu Key Assignments
	<b>70</b>	Clearing CUSTOM Menu Key Assignments
	<b>70</b>	Using the <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">XEQ</span> Key
	<b>71</b>	Specifying Parameters
	<b>72</b>	Numeric Parameters
	<b>73</b>	Alpha Parameters
	<b>73</b>	Specifying Stack Registers as Parameters
	<b>74</b>	Indirect Addressing—Parameters Stored Elsewhere
	<b>75</b>	Exercises: Specifying Parameters
	<b>76</b>	Function Preview and NULL
 <b>5</b>	 <b>77</b>	 <b>Numeric Functions</b>
	<b>77</b>	General Mathematical Functions
	<b>79</b>	Percentages
	<b>79</b>	Simple Percent
	<b>79</b>	Percent Change
	<b>80</b>	Trigonometry
	<b>80</b>	Setting Trigonometric Modes
	<b>80</b>	Trigonometric Functions
	<b>82</b>	The Conversion Functions
	<b>83</b>	Converting Between Degrees and Radians
	<b>83</b>	Using the Hours-Minutes-Seconds Format
	<b>84</b>	Coordinate Conversions (Polar, Rectangular)
	<b>86</b>	Altering Parts of Numbers
	<b>87</b>	Probability
	<b>87</b>	The Probability Functions
	<b>88</b>	Generating a Random Number
	<b>89</b>	Hyperbolic Functions
 <b>6</b>	 <b>90</b>	 <b>Complex Numbers</b>
	<b>90</b>	Entering Complex Numbers
	<b>92</b>	How Complex Numbers Are Displayed
	<b>93</b>	Arithmetic With Complex Numbers
	<b>94</b>	Vector Operations Using Complex Numbers
	<b>98</b>	Storing Complex Numbers
	<b>98</b>	Complex-Number Variables
	<b>98</b>	Making the Storage Registers Complex

<b>7</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>Printing</b>
	<b>101</b>	Common Printing Operations
	<b>102</b>	Printing Modes
	<b>103</b>	Flags That Affect Printing
	<b>103</b>	Printing Speed and Delay Time
	<b>104</b>	Low Calculator Batteries
	<b>104</b>	Calculator Functions That Print
	<b>104</b>	Printing Graphics in the Display
	<b>104</b>	Printing Programs
	<b>105</b>	Character Sets

---

## Part 2: Programming

<b>8</b>	<b>108</b>	<b>Simple Programming</b>
	<b>108</b>	An Introduction to Keystroke Programming
	<b>111</b>	Program-Entry Mode
	<b>111</b>	The Program Pointer
	<b>111</b>	Moving the Program Pointer
	<b>111</b>	Inserting Program Lines
	<b>112</b>	Deleting Program Lines
	<b>112</b>	Executing Programs
	<b>112</b>	Normal Execution
	<b>113</b>	Running a Program With <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">R/S</span>
	<b>114</b>	Stopping a Program
	<b>114</b>	Testing and Debugging a Program
	<b>115</b>	Error Stops
	<b>115</b>	The Basic Parts of a Program
	<b>115</b>	Program Lines and Program Memory
	<b>116</b>	Program Labels
	<b>117</b>	The Body of a Program
	<b>117</b>	Constants
	<b>118</b>	Program ENDS
	<b>119</b>	Clearing Programs
<b>9</b>	<b>121</b>	<b>Program Input and Output</b>
	<b>121</b>	Using the INPUT Function
	<b>125</b>	Using a Variable Menu
	<b>128</b>	Displaying Labeled Results (VIEW)
	<b>129</b>	Displaying Messages (AVIEW and PROMPT)
	<b>130</b>	Entering Alpha Strings Into Programs

<b>131</b>	Printing During Program Execution
<b>131</b>	Using Print Functions in Programs
<b>132</b>	Printing With VIEW and AVIEW
<b>132</b>	Working With Alpha Data
<b>132</b>	Moving Data Into and Out of the Alpha Register
<b>134</b>	Searching the Alpha Register
<b>135</b>	Manipulating Alpha Strings
<b>135</b>	Graphics
<b>135</b>	Turning On a Pixel in the Display
<b>136</b>	Drawing Lines in the Display
<b>136</b>	Building a Graphics Image Using the Alpha Register

## **10**

<b>141</b>	<b>Programming Techniques</b>
<b>141</b>	Branching
<b>141</b>	Branching to a Label (GTO)
<b>143</b>	Calling Subroutines (XEQ and RTN)
<b>145</b>	The Programmable Menu
<b>148</b>	Local Label Searches
<b>149</b>	Global Label Searches
<b>149</b>	Conditional Functions
<b>150</b>	Flag Tests
<b>151</b>	Comparisons
<b>151</b>	Testing the Data Type
<b>151</b>	Bit Test
<b>152</b>	Looping
<b>152</b>	Looping Using Conditional Functions
<b>153</b>	Loop-Control Functions
<b>154</b>	Controlling the CUSTOM Menu
<b>154</b>	Example Programs
<b>154</b>	The Display Plot Program ("DPLOT")
<b>158</b>	The Printer Plot Program ("PLOT")

## **11**

<b>166</b>	<b>Using HP-41 Programs</b>
<b>166</b>	Important Differences
<b>167</b>	HP-41 User Keyboard
<b>168</b>	Statistical Operations
<b>169</b>	Printer Interface
<b>169</b>	The Alpha Register
<b>169</b>	Range of Numbers
<b>169</b>	Data Errors and the Real-Result Flag
<b>170</b>	The Display
<b>170</b>	Keystrokes

<b>171</b>	No Packing
<b>171</b>	Function Names
<b>175</b>	Enhancing HP-41 Programs

---

## Part 3: Built-In Applications

<b>12</b>	<b>178</b>	<b>The Solver</b>
	<b>178</b>	Using the Solver
	<b>179</b>	Step 1: Writing a Program for the Solver
	<b>182</b>	Step 2: Selecting a Program To Solve
	<b>182</b>	Step 3: Storing the Known Variables
	<b>183</b>	Step 4: Solving for the Unknown
	<b>183</b>	Choosing Initial Guesses
	<b>186</b>	How the Solver Works
	<b>187</b>	Halting and Restarting the Solver
	<b>187</b>	Interpreting the Results
	<b>189</b>	Using the Solver in a Program
	<b>190</b>	More Solver Examples
	<b>190</b>	The Equation of Motion for Free-Fall
	<b>192</b>	The Time Value of Money Equation
<b>13</b>	<b>196</b>	<b>Numerical Integration</b>
	<b>197</b>	Using Integration
	<b>197</b>	Step 1: Writing a Program for Integration
	<b>199</b>	Step 2: Selecting a Program To Integrate
	<b>200</b>	Step 3: Storing the Constants
	<b>200</b>	Step 4: Selecting a Variable of Integration
	<b>200</b>	Step 5: Setting the Limits and Calculating the Integral
	<b>202</b>	Accuracy of Integration
	<b>203</b>	Using Integration in a Program
<b>14</b>	<b>205</b>	<b>Matrix Operations</b>
	<b>205</b>	Matrices in the HP-42S
	<b>206</b>	Creating and Filling a Matrix in the X-Register
	<b>208</b>	Creating and Filling a Named Matrix
	<b>211</b>	The Matrix Editor
	<b>212</b>	How Elements Get Stored
	<b>213</b>	Matrices That Automatically Grow
	<b>213</b>	Restoring the Old Value
	<b>214</b>	Inserting and Deleting Rows



<b>214</b>	Complex Matrices
<b>214</b>	Creating Complex Matrices
<b>215</b>	Converting a Complex Matrix to Real
<b>215</b>	Filling a Complex Matrix
<b>217</b>	Redimensioning a Matrix
<b>218</b>	Matrix Arithmetic
<b>219</b>	Matrix Functions
<b>220</b>	Vector Operations
<b>220</b>	Simultaneous Linear Equations
<b>223</b>	Matrix Utility Functions (Indexing)
<b>223</b>	Controlling the Index Pointers
<b>225</b>	Storing and Recalling Matrix Elements
<b>225</b>	Programmable Matrix Editor Functions
<b>225</b>	Swapping Rows
<b>226</b>	Submatrices
<b>227</b>	Special Matrices in the HP-42S
<b>227</b>	The Storage Registers (REGS)
<b>227</b>	Matrices for Simultaneous Equations

## **15**

<b>228</b>	<b>Statistics</b>
<b>228</b>	Entering Statistical Data
<b>231</b>	Statistical Functions
<b>231</b>	Sums
<b>231</b>	Mean
<b>231</b>	Weighted Mean
<b>232</b>	Standard Deviation
<b>232</b>	Correcting Mistakes
<b>233</b>	The Summation Registers
<b>237</b>	Limitations on Data Values
<b>237</b>	Using Statistical Data Stored in a Matrix
<b>239</b>	Curve Fitting and Forecasting
<b>244</b>	How Curve Fitting Works

## **16**

<b>245</b>	<b>Base Operations</b>
<b>245</b>	Base Conversions
<b>247</b>	The Representation of Numbers
<b>248</b>	Negative Numbers
<b>248</b>	Showing Numbers
<b>248</b>	Range of Numbers
<b>249</b>	Integer Arithmetic
<b>249</b>	The Logic Functions
<b>251</b>	Programming Information

---

## Part 4: Appendixes and Reference

<b>A</b>	<b>254</b>	<b>Assistance, Batteries, and Service</b>
	<b>254</b>	Obtaining Help in Operating the Calculator
	<b>254</b>	Answers to Common Questions
	<b>257</b>	Power and Batteries
	<b>257</b>	Low-Power Indications
	<b>258</b>	Installing Batteries
	<b>260</b>	Environmental Limits
	<b>260</b>	Determining if the Calculator Requires Service
	<b>261</b>	Confirming Calculator Operation—the Self-Test
	<b>262</b>	Limited One-Year Warranty
	<b>262</b>	What Is Covered
	<b>262</b>	What Is Not Covered
	<b>263</b>	Consumer Transactions in the United Kingdom
	<b>263</b>	If the Calculator Requires Service
	<b>263</b>	Obtaining Service
	<b>264</b>	Service Charge
	<b>264</b>	Shipping Instructions
	<b>265</b>	Warranty on Service
	<b>265</b>	Service Agreements
	<b>265</b>	Radio Frequency Interference
<b>B</b>	<b>267</b>	<b>Managing Calculator Memory</b>
	<b>267</b>	Resetting the Calculator
	<b>267</b>	Clearing All Memory
	<b>268</b>	Reclaiming Memory
	<b>268</b>	How the HP-42S Conserves Memory
	<b>269</b>	What Happens When Data Is Copied
	<b>270</b>	Writing Memory-Efficient Programs
	<b>271</b>	Memory Organization
<b>C</b>	<b>273</b>	<b>Flags</b>
	<b>273</b>	User Flags (00 Through 10 and 81 Through 99)
	<b>273</b>	Control Flags (11 Through 35)
	<b>276</b>	System Flags (36 Through 80)
	<b>276</b>	Flags That Represent Options
	<b>278</b>	Flags That Represent Conditions
	<b>280</b>	Summary of HP-42S Flags

<b>D</b>	<b>283</b>	<b>Messages</b>
<b>E</b>	<b>288</b>	<b>Character Table</b>
	<b>292</b>	<b>Menu Maps</b>
	<b>310</b>	<b>Operation Index</b>
	<b>336</b>	<b>Subject Index</b>



# Part 1

## Basic Operation

---

<b>Page</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>1: Getting Started</b>
	<b>42</b>	<b>2: The Automatic Memory Stack</b>
	<b>55</b>	<b>3: Variables and Storage Registers</b>
	<b>67</b>	<b>4: Executing Functions</b>
	<b>77</b>	<b>5: Numeric Functions</b>
	<b>90</b>	<b>6: Complex Numbers</b>
	<b>100</b>	<b>7: Printing</b>

## Getting Started

---

This chapter provides you with a detailed orientation to the HP-42S. You'll learn how to:

- Use menus to access calculator functions.
- Clear information from calculator memory.
- Key in numbers and do arithmetic.
- Change the way numbers are displayed.
- Key in alphanumeric data with the ALPHA menu.
- Use catalogs to review the contents of calculator memory.

---

## Important Preliminaries

### Power On and Off; Continuous Memory

To turn on the HP-42S, press **EXIT**. Notice that **ON** is printed below the key.

To turn the calculator off, press **OFF**. That is, press and release the shift key, **■**, then press **EXIT** (which has OFF printed above it). Since the calculator has *Continuous Memory*, turning it off does not affect any information you've stored.

After about 10 minutes of inactivity, the calculator turns itself off to conserve battery power. When you turn the calculator on again, you can resume working right where you left off.



Under most conditions, calculator batteries last well over a year. If you see the low-battery symbol (🔋) in the display, replace the batteries as soon as possible. Refer to appendix A for details and instructions.

## Regular and Shifted Keystrokes

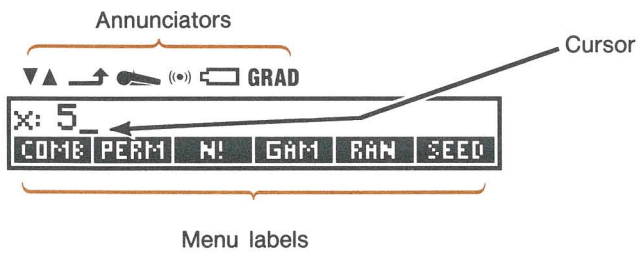
Each key has two functions: one printed on its face, and a *shifted* function printed in color above the key. For example, OFF is the shifted function of the **EXIT** key (written as **OFF**). To execute a shifted function, press **⇧**, then press the key.



Pressing **⇧** turns on the shift annunciator (↗), which remains on until you press the next key. To cancel ↗, just press **⇧** again.

The ↗ remains active for as long as you hold down the **⇧** key. To execute several consecutive shifted functions, hold **⇧** down and press the appropriate keys.

## Annunciators

The calculator uses seven *annunciators* at the top of the display to indicate various conditions.



Annunciator	Meaning
▼▲	The ▼ and ▲ keys are active for moving through a multirow menu (page 23).
↗	Shift (■) is active.
	The calculator is sending information to the printer (page 100).
((•))	The calculator is busy executing a function or a program.
	Battery power is low.
<b>RAD</b>	Radians angular mode is set (page 80).
<b>GRAD</b>	Grads angular mode is set (page 80).

## Adjusting the Display Contrast

To adjust the contrast of the display for various viewing angles and lighting conditions:

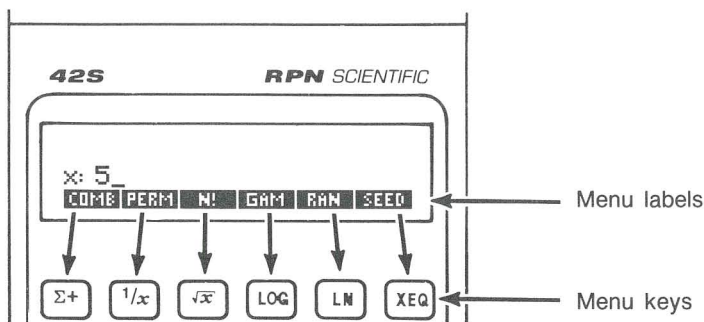
1. Press and hold **EXIT**.
2. Press **+** to darken the display, **-** to lighten the display.
3. Release **EXIT**.

You can use this sequence at any time without disrupting any other calculator operation.

---

## Using Menus

The top row of keys is very special. In addition to the standard functions printed on the keyboard, these six keys can be redefined by *menu labels* in the display. To execute a function in a menu, press the key directly below the corresponding menu label.



**Example: Using a Menu.** Use the  $N!$  (*factorial*) function in the menu shown above to calculate the factorial of 5 (that is,  $5!$ ). Key in 5 and display the *PROB* (*probability*) menu.

5 **PROB**

x: 5.0000
COMB PERM N! GAM RAN SEED

To execute the  $N!$  function, press the key directly below the menu label ( $\sqrt{x}$ ). This is written as:

**N!**

y: 0.0000
x: 120.0000

Thus,  $5! = 120$ .

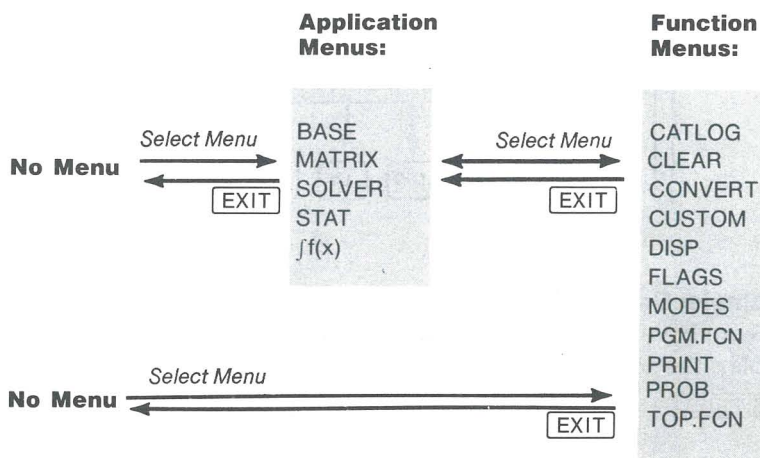
## Displaying a Menu

Notice that some of the shifted functions are printed on the keyboard in shaded boxes. These are keys that select menus. When you select a menu with one of these keys, the first row of the menu is immediately displayed.

**Application Menus.** There are five menu-driven *applications* in the HP-42S. (See the illustration below.) Application menus have top priority among all of the menus. To exit from an application, press **EXIT** or select another application.

**Function Menus.** The HP-42S has over 350 built-in functions. The most frequently used functions are grouped into *function menus*. In the example above, you used a function menu ( **PROB**) to execute the  $N!$  function.

If you select a function menu while in an application, the calculator remembers the application menu and displays it again when you exit the function menu.



**Disabling Automatic Exit.** Function menus automatically exit as soon as you execute one of the functions in the menu. If you want to use a function menu repeatedly, you can disable automatic exiting by selecting the menu twice. For example, if you press  $\blacksquare$  **PROB**  $\blacksquare$  **PROB**, the PROB menu stays in the display until you press **EXIT** or select another menu.







**Menu Labels Marked With "■".** There are a variety of modes and settings in the HP-42S. If a menu label contains the ■ character, then that mode or setting is currently selected. For example, display the MODES menu:



The menu in this display shows that Degrees ( **DEG■** ) and Rectangular ( **RECT■** ) modes are selected. (These modes are explained in chapter 5.)

**The ALPHA Menu.** The ALPHA menu (  $\blacksquare$  **ALPHA** ) is neither an application nor a function menu. It is an extension of the keyboard that allows you to type characters (alphabetic and others) that don't appear on the keyboard. Instructions for using the ALPHA menu are on page 37.


**The TOP.FCN Menu.** Pressing  **TOP.FCN** (*top-row functions*) displays a menu containing the functions (shifted and unshifted) on the six top-row keys:

$\Sigma -$	$y^x$	$x^2$	$10^x$	$e^x$	GTO
					

Use the TOP.FCN menu when you want to use one of these functions without exiting from the current application menu.

## Multirow Menus (▼▲)

Menus with more than six labels are divided into *rows*. If a menu has more than one row, the ▼▲ annunciator appears, indicating that the ▼ and ▲ keys can be used to display the other rows.

For example, the CLEAR menu has two rows. Press  **CLEAR** to see the first row:

					
---	---	---	---	---	---



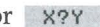

Press ▼ to display the second row:

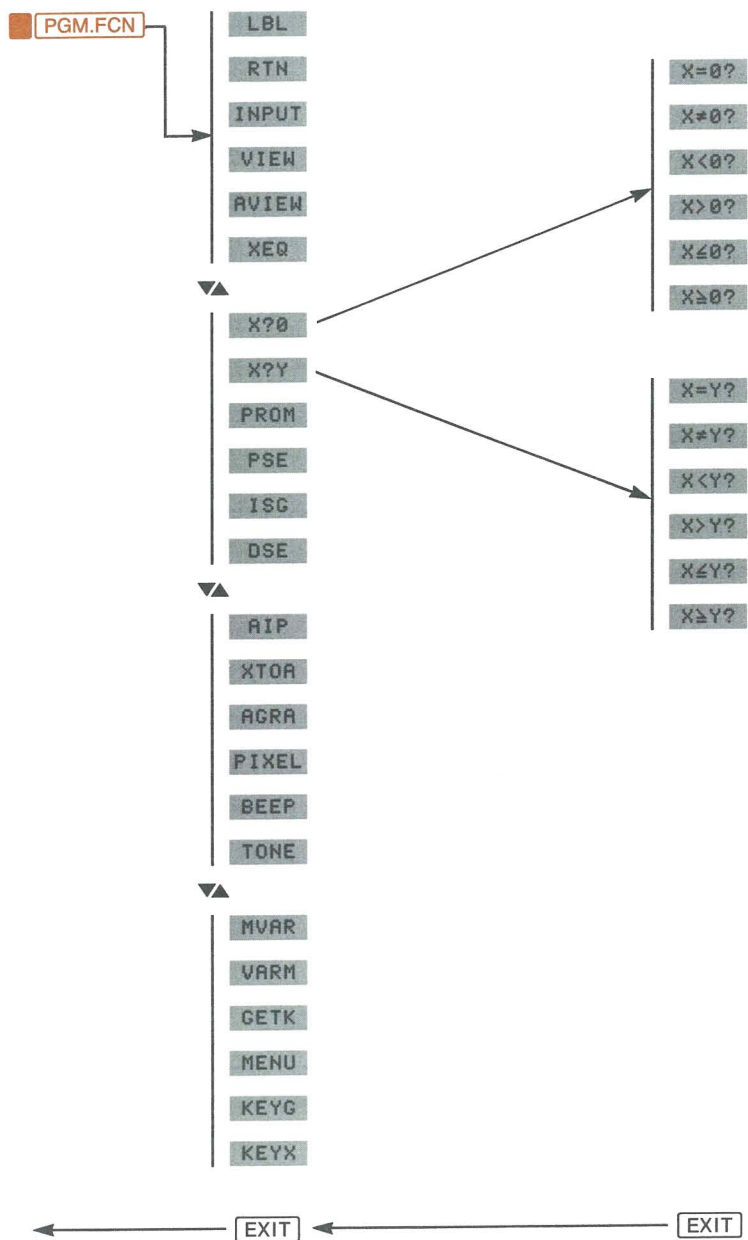
					
---	---	---	---	---	---

Because menus are *circular*, pressing ▼ again returns to the first row.

## Submenus and

Some menu keys lead to other menus, called *nested* menus or *submenus*. The *menu map* below shows:

- Pressing  **PGM.FCN** displays the first of four rows in the PGM.FCN menu.
- Pressing ▼ or ▲ displays the next or previous row (▼▲ is displayed).
- Pressing  or  displays a corresponding submenu.
- Pressing  exits the current menu. If it is a submenu, then the previous menu is displayed.





**Example: Displaying the X?0 Submenu.** Display the second row of the PGM.FCN menu.

 PGM.FCN

x: 120.0000									
L&L	RTN	INPUT	VIEW	WVIEW	REQ				



x: 120.0000									
X?0	X?Y	PROM	PSE	ISG	DSE				

Now display the X?0 submenu.

 X?0

x: 120.0000									
X=0?	X≠0?	X<0?	X>0?	X≤0?	X≥0?				

When you exit the submenu, the calculator displays the second row of PGM.FCN again.

 EXIT

x: 120.0000									
X?0	X?Y	PROM	PSE	ISG	DSE				

Press  again and the PGM.FCN menu disappears.

 EXIT



Y: 0.0000									
x: 120.0000									





---

## Clearing the Calculator

There are several ways to clear information from the calculator. You can clear characters, numbers, variables, programs, or even all of calculator memory with a single operation.

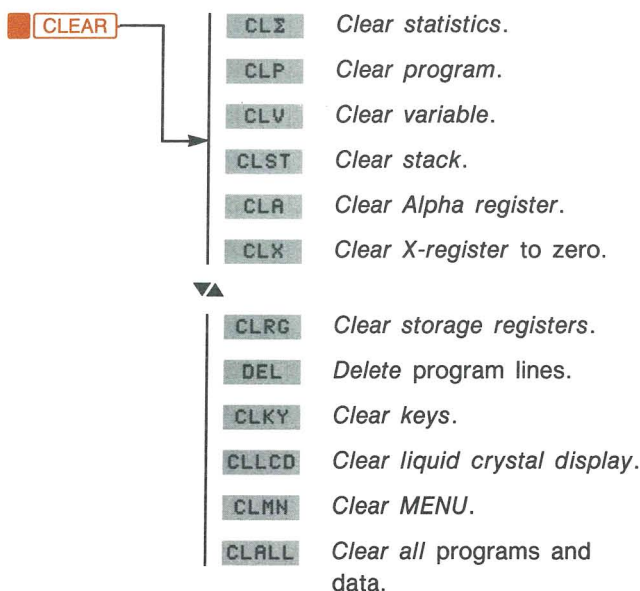
### Using the Key

The  key is a backspace and delete key. The calculator's response when you press  depends on what is in the display.

- If a cursor is present ( \_ ),  backspaces and deletes the preceding digit or character.
- If a message is displayed,  clears the message.
- If a number (or other data) is displayed *without a cursor*,  clears the entire number to zero.
- If program lines are displayed,  deletes the current program line. (Program-entry mode is explained in chapter 8.)

## The CLEAR Menu

The CLEAR menu contains 12 functions for clearing information from the calculator.



## Clearing All Programs and Data

The CLALL (*clear all*) function clears *all* programs and data from calculator memory but leaves display formats and other settings intact.


1. Press **CLEAR** **▼** **CLALL**.
2. Press **YES** to confirm; or any other key to cancel.

A special key sequence can be used to clear all of memory (including modes and flags). Refer to “Clearing All Memory” in appendix B.

---




## Errors and Messages

Whenever you attempt an operation that the calculator cannot complete, it displays a message that specifies the problem. If you're not sure what you've done wrong, refer to appendix D, "Messages."

You do not have to clear the message to continue working—the message disappears as soon as you press a key. If you want to clear the message without altering anything else, press .



---

## Keying In Numbers

If you make a mistake while keying in a number, press  to backspace and delete the last digit, or press  **CLEAR**  **CLX** (clear X-register) to clear the entire number.

## Making Numbers Negative



The  (change sign) key changes the sign of a number.

- To key in a negative number, type the number, then press .
- To change the sign of a number *already* displayed, just press .

## Exponents of Ten

Numbers with exponents of ten are shown in the display with an **E** to separate the nonexponent part of the number from the exponent. A number too large or too small for the current display format is automatically displayed in exponential form. For example, the number 123,000,000,000,000 ( $1.23 \times 10^{14}$ ) is displayed as 1.23000E14.

### To key in a number with an exponent:

1. Key in the nonexponent part of the number. If this part is negative, press .
2. Press . Notice that the cursor follows the **E**.

3. Key in the exponent. If it is negative, press  $\boxed{+/-}$ . The largest possible exponent you can key in is  $\pm 499$  (with one digit to the left of the decimal point).

For example, to key in Planck's constant,  $6.6262 \times 10^{-34}$ , you would press: 6.6262  $\boxed{E}$  34  $\boxed{+/-}$ .

For a power of ten without a multiplier, such as  $10^{34}$ , just press  $\boxed{E}$  34. The calculator automatically inserts a "1" before the exponent: 1  $\boxed{E}$  34 \_.

**Other Exponent Functions.** To specify an exponent of ten *while entering a number*, use  $\boxed{E}$ . To *calculate* an exponent of ten (the base 10 antilogarithm), use  $\boxed{10^x}$ . To *calculate* the result of *any* number raised to a power, use  $\boxed{y^x}$ . Numeric functions (including  $\boxed{10^x}$  and  $\boxed{y^x}$ ) are covered in chapter 5.

## Understanding Digit Entry

As you key in a number, the *cursor* ( \_ ) appears in the display. The cursor shows you where the next digit will go and indicates that the number is not completed yet. That is, when a cursor is present, *digit entry is not terminated*.

- If digit entry *is not* terminated, then  $\boxed{\leftarrow}$  backspaces to erase the last digit.
- If digit entry *is* terminated (no cursor), then  $\boxed{\leftarrow}$  clears the entire number (which is equivalent to  $\boxed{\text{CLEAR}}$   $\boxed{\text{CLX}}$ ).

---

## Simple Arithmetic

All numeric functions follow one simple rule: *when you press a function key, the calculator immediately executes the function*. Therefore, all operands must be present *before* you execute a function.

Arithmetic can be broken down into two types of functions: one-number functions (such as square root) and two-number functions (such as addition).



**Note**

Many of the displays shown in this manual assume that you've worked the preceding example. Unless indicated otherwise, previous results and the contents of your calculator are irrelevant to the current example.

## One-Number Functions

One-number functions operate on the the value in the display ( $\times$ : *value*). To use a one-number function:

1. Key in the number. (If the number is already displayed, you can skip this step.)
2. Press the function key. (The function may be on a normal or shifted key or in a menu.)

For example, to calculate  $\frac{1}{32}$ , key in 32 ...

32

Y: 120.0000
X: 32_

... then press the function key:

$\boxed{1/x}$

Y: 120.0000
X: 0.0313

The result (to four decimal places) is 0.0313.

Now calculate  $\sqrt{1.5129}$ .

1.5129  $\boxed{\sqrt{x}}$

Y: 0.0313
X: 1.2300

If a number is already in the display, you don't have to key it in again. Calculate the square of 1.23.

$\boxed{x^2}$

Y: 0.0313
X: 1.5129

Remember, you can make a number negative at any time with the  $\boxed{+/-}$  key. Notice that only the number in the bottom line changes.

$\boxed{+/-}$

$\boxed{y: 0.0313}$   
 $\boxed{x: -1.5129}$

One-number functions also include the logarithmic functions, the trigonometric functions, the parts-of-numbers functions, and the hyperbolic functions; they are covered in chapter 5.

## Two-Number Functions

To use a two-number function (such as  $\boxed{+}$ ,  $\boxed{-}$ ,  $\boxed{\times}$ , or  $\boxed{\div}$ ):

1. Key in the first number.
2. Press  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$  to separate the first number from the second.
3. Key in the second number. (Do not press  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$  again.)
4. Press the function key.

*Remember, both numbers must be present before executing the function.*

For example:

To Calculate:	Press:	Result:
$12 + 3$	12 $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$ 3 $\boxed{+}$	15.0000
$12 - 3$	12 $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$ 3 $\boxed{-}$	9.0000
$12 \times 3$	12 $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$ 3 $\boxed{\times}$	36.0000
$12 \div 3$	12 $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$ 3 $\boxed{\div}$	4.0000

The order of entry is essential for noncommutative functions (such as  $\boxed{-}$  and  $\boxed{\div}$ ). If the numbers have been entered in the wrong order, you can still get the correct answer without reentering the numbers. *Swap* the order of the numbers by pressing  $\boxed{x \leftrightarrow y}$  (*x exchange y*), then perform the intended function. (Refer also to "Exchanging *x* and *y*" in chapter 2.)



## Chain Calculations

The speed and simplicity of calculating with the HP-42S is apparent during *chain calculations* (calculations with more than one operation). Even during the longest of calculations, *you still work with only one or two numbers at a time*—the automatic memory stack stores intermediate results until you need them. (The stack is explained in chapter 2.) The process of working through a problem is the same as working it out on paper, but the calculator does the hard part.

**Example: A Chain Calculation.** Solve  $(12 + 3) \times 7$ . To work this problem on paper, you would first calculate the intermediate result of  $(12 + 3)$ . That is, you would start *inside* the parentheses and work outward.

$$\begin{array}{r} 15 \\ (12 + 3) \times 7 \end{array}$$

Then you would multiply the intermediate result by 7 to get the final answer.

$$15 \times 7 = 105$$

Solving the problem on the HP-42S uses the same logic. Start inside the parentheses:

12 [ENTER] 3 [+]

Y: 4.0000
X: 15.0000

This intermediate result is saved automatically—you don't need to press [ENTER]. Simply multiply it by seven.

7 [×]

Y: 4.0000
X: 105.0000

**Example: Another Chain Calculation.** Problems that have multiple parentheses can be solved in the same simple manner because intermediate results are automatically remembered. For example, to solve  $(2 + 3) \times (4 + 5)$  on paper, you would first calculate the values inside parentheses, and then you would multiply them together.

$$\begin{array}{r} 5 \quad \times \quad 9 \\ (2 + 3) \times (4 + 5) \end{array}$$

Again, working the problem on the HP-42S involves the same logical steps:

2 [ENTER] 3 [+]

Y: 105.0000
X: 5.0000

4 [ENTER] 5 [+]

Y: 5.0000
X: 9.0000

Notice that the two intermediate results in the display are the same ones you calculated on paper. Press [x] to multiply them.

[x]

Y: 105.0000
X: 45.0000

**Remember:** This method of entering numbers, called Reverse Polish Notation (RPN), is unambiguous and therefore does not need parentheses. It has the following advantages:

- You never work with more than two numbers at a time.
- Pressing a function key immediately executes that function so there is no need for an [=] key.
- Intermediate results appear as they are calculated, so you can check each step as you go.
- Intermediate results are automatically stored. They reappear as they are needed for the calculation—the last result stored is the first to come back out.
- You can calculate in the same order as you would with pencil and paper.
- If you make a mistake during a complicated calculation, you don't have to start over. (Correcting mistakes is covered in chapter 2.)
- Calculations with other types of data (such as complex numbers and matrices) follow the same rules.
- Calculations in programs follow the same steps as when you execute them manually.

## Exercises: Calculations for Practice

The following calculations exercise the methods you've learned for simple arithmetic. Work each problem in the same order as you would work it on paper. (There may be more than one way to work each problem.) Remember, use **ENTER** only for separating two numbers entered *sequentially*.

**Calculate:**  $(2 + 3) \div 10$

**Answer:** 0.5000

**A Solution:** 2 **ENTER** 3 **+** 10 **÷**

**Calculate:**  $2 \div (3 + 10)$

**Answer:** 0.1538

**A Solution:** 3 **ENTER** 10 **+** 2 **xzy** **÷**

**Another Solution:** 2 **ENTER** 3 **ENTER** 10 **+** **÷**

**Calculate:**  $(14 + 7 + 3 - 2) \div 4$

**Answer:** 5.5000

**A Solution:** 14 **ENTER** 7 **+** 3 **+** 2 **-** 4 **÷**

**Calculate:**  $4 \div (14 + (7 \times 3) - 2)$

**Answer:** 0.1212

**A Solution:** 7 **ENTER** 3 **x** 14 **+** 2 **-** 4 **xzy** **÷**

**Another Solution:** 4 **ENTER** 14 **ENTER** 7 **ENTER** 3 **x** **+** 2 **-** **÷**

---

## Range of Numbers

The HP-42S is capable of representing numbers as large as  $9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$  and as small as  $1 \times 10^{-499}$ . If you attempt to execute a function that returns a result larger than  $9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ , the calculator displays the **Out of Range** error message. The operation you attempted is ignored, and the message disappears when you press the next key.

If you attempt an arithmetic function that returns a number whose magnitude is smaller than  $1 \times 10^{-499}$ , the calculator automatically substitutes the number zero.

---

## Changing the Display Format

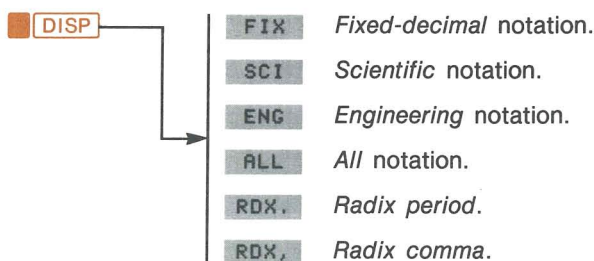
Internally, the HP-42S *always* saves numbers with full 12-digit accuracy plus a three-digit exponent of ten.

Even though numbers are stored with full precision, the way they're displayed depends on the current display format. There are two general ways to display numbers:

- Round the number to a specified number of digits. There are three formats that do this: FIX (*fixed-decimal notation*), SCI (*scientific notation*), and ENG (*engineering notation*).
- Show all of the digits in a number (except trailing zeros). This is the ALL format.

In addition to controlling how digits are displayed, you can select the character used as the decimal point—called the *radix*. The radix may be a period (default) or a comma.


Functions for changing the display format are in the DISP (*display*) menu:



## Number of Decimal Places

The default display format is FIX 4. (The calculator displays numbers rounded to four places to the right of the decimal.)


## To change the number of decimal places:

1. Press  **DISP**.
2. Press: **FIX**, **SCI**, **ENG**, or **ALL**.
3. For FIX, SCI, and ENG, specify the number of digits (0 through 11):
  - Key in two digits (such as 02).
  - Or, key in a single digit followed by **ENTER** (such as 2 **ENTER**).

**Example: Changing the Display Format.** Key in the numbers  $2.46 \times 10^7$  and 1234567.89, and then change the display format to ENG 2.

2.46 **E** 7 **ENTER** 1234567.89

Y: 24,600,000.0000  
X: 1,234,567.89\_

 **DISP** **ENG** 2 **ENTER**


Y: 24.6E6  
X: 1.23E6

Now change to the ALL display format.

 **DISP** **ALL**

Y: 24,600,000  
X: 1,234,567.89

Now return to the default setting (FIX 4).

 **DISP** **FIX** 4 **ENTER**

Y: 24,600,000.0000  
X: 1,234,567.8900



**Fixed-Decimal Notation (FIX).** In FIX notation, the calculator displays numbers rounded to the specified number of decimal places. Exponents of 10 are used only if the number is too large or too small to display using the current display format. (Example: 3.1416.)

**Scientific Notation (SCI).** In SCI notation, the calculator displays numbers with one digit to the left of the decimal point and the specified number of digits to the right. An exponent of 10 is always shown; even if it is zero. (Example: 6.0220E26.)

**Engineering Notation (ENG).** In ENG notation, the calculator displays numbers in a format similar to SCI except the exponent of 10 is always a multiple of three. This means that more than one digit may appear to the left of the decimal point. The number of digits you specify indicates how many digits to display after the first digit. (Example: 10.423E-3.)

**All Notation (ALL).** In ALL notation, the calculator displays numbers using full precision. That is, all significant digits to the right of the decimal point are shown. (Example: 4.17359249.)

## Selecting the Radix Mark (Comma vs. Period)

To change the radix mark to a comma, press  **DISP**  **RDX,** . When the radix is a comma, periods are used to separate digits.


1.234.567,8900

To change the decimal point back to a period, press  **DISP**  **RDX.** .

1,234,567.8900

You can remove the digit separators by clearing flag 29 (page 276).

## Showing All 12 Digits

When you press and hold the  **SHOW** key, the calculator displays the contents of the X-register using the ALL format—that is, all significant digits are shown. When you release the key, the display returns to the current display format.

1.23456789012  **ENTER**


Y: 1.2346  
X: 1.2346

 **SHOW** (hold down)

1.23456789012

(release)

Y: 1.2346  
X: 1.2346

The  **SHOW** key can also be used to show the entire contents of the Alpha register (page 40), a long program line (page 111), or the first element in a matrix (page 207).





# Keying In Alphanumeric Data



Alphabetic and other characters are typed into the HP-42S using the ALPHA menu, which contains all the letters in the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase) and many other characters.

One or more characters typed with the ALPHA menu form an *Alpha string*.




## Using the ALPHA Menu

**To type a string of characters into the Alpha register:**

1. Press  **ALPHA** to select the ALPHA menu.
2. Press an ALPHA menu key to select a *group* of letters or characters.
3. Press a menu key to type a character. To type a lowercase letter, press  before typing the letter.

Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each letter or character. You can also use the following keys to type Alpha characters:  **%**,  **π**, **E**, **÷**, **x**, **-**, **+**, **0**, **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, **6**, **7**, **8**, **9**, and **.**

**Example.** The keystrokes for typing the string The HP-42S. are:


 **ALPHA** **RSTUV** **T**  (hold down) **FGHI** **H** **ABCDE** **E**  
(release ) **WXYZ** **FGHI** **H** **NOPQ** **P** **-** **4** **2**  
**RSTUV** **S** **.**

For simplicity, this manual shows these keystrokes as:

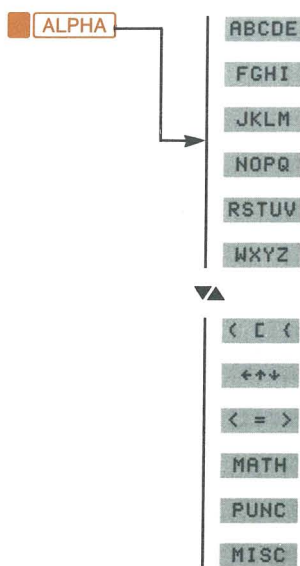
 **ALPHA** The HP-42S.

The HP-42S.																									
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z

## ALPHA Typing Tips:

- Any blank menu key in the ALPHA menu can be used to type a space character. A rapid sequence for typing a space is **XEQ** **XEQ** (that is **WXYZ** or **MISC** ).
- To type several lowercase letters, hold down the shift key () while typing.






The characters in each of the submenus are shown in the menu maps beginning on page 292.

## The Alpha Display and the Alpha Register

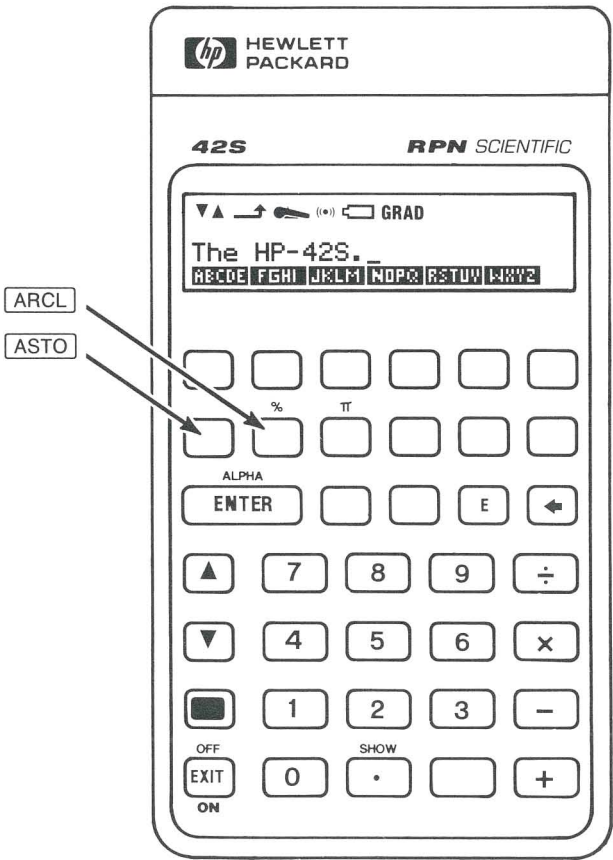
Alpha strings can be typed only when the ALPHA menu is displayed. How strings are used or where they are stored, however, depends on other circumstances. Alpha strings can be:

- Typed directly into the Alpha register.
- Used as a function parameter to specify a variable name or program label (page 73).
- Entered as program instructions (page 130).

**Alpha Mode: Entering Characters Into the Alpha Register.** In the previous example, the Alpha characters were entered into the *Alpha register*. When you press  **ALPHA**, the calculator displays the ALPHA menu *and* the Alpha register—this is *Alpha mode*.

If there are characters in the Alpha register, they are displayed when you enter Alpha mode. The Alpha register is cleared when you begin typing. To append characters to the current contents of Alpha, press **ENTER** to turn the cursor on before you begin to type.





The following illustration shows the keys that are active in Alpha mode.





**Capacity of the Alpha Register.** The Alpha register can hold up to 44 characters. The calculator beeps when the Alpha register gets full. The beep warns you that each additional character you type will push the first (left-most) character out of the Alpha register.

If the display overflows, the ... character indicates there are some characters you can't see.

### To display the entire Alpha register:

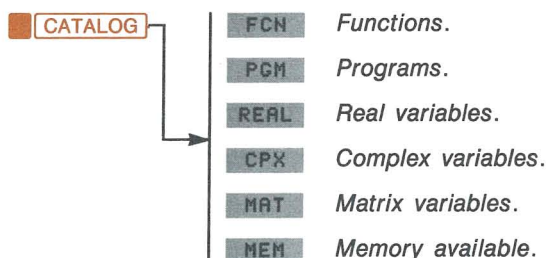
- While in Alpha mode, press and hold  .
- While not in Alpha mode, press   (*Alpha view*).

**Printing the Alpha Register.** To print the contents of the Alpha register, press   (*print Alpha*). For more information on printing, refer to chapter 7.

---

## Catalogs

Catalogs are used to view the contents of calculator memory. You can also use a catalog to execute functions or programs or recall variables.



To display the amount of available memory, press and hold the  key. The calculator displays a message like this:

Available Memory:  
6836 Bytes

The message disappears when you release the key.

---

## An Introduction to Flags

Throughout the rest of this manual there are references to numbered *flags*. A flag has two states, *set* and *clear*. If you are unfamiliar with flags, simply think of them as switches that are either on or off.

The HP-42S has 100 flags (numbered 00–99); most of them have special purposes inside the calculator. To set, clear, and test the status of flags, use the functions in the FLAGS menu:




For more information on flags, refer to appendix C.

## The Automatic Memory Stack

---

This chapter explains how calculations take place in Hewlett-Packard's automatic memory stack and how it minimizes the number of keystrokes required to do complicated calculations.

More specifically, you will learn:

- What the stack is.
- How the stack automatically remembers results from previous calculations.
- What is meant by *stack lift* and *stack drop*.
- How to view and manipulate the contents of the stack.
- How to save keystrokes and correct mistakes with .

*You do not need to read and understand this chapter to use the HP-42S. However, you'll find that understanding this material will greatly enhance your use of the calculator. In programs, efficient use of the stack saves memory by reducing the number of program steps needed to solve a problem.*

---

### What the Stack Is


*Automatic storage of intermediate results* is the reason the HP-42S easily processes complex calculations, and does so without parentheses. The key to automatic storage is the *automatic, RPN memory stack*.\*

\* HP's operating logic is based on a mathematical logic known as "Polish Notation," developed by the Polish logician Jan Łukasiewicz (1878—1956). While conventional algebraic notation places the operators *between* the relevant numbers or variables, Łukasiewicz's notation places them *before* the numbers or variables. For optimal efficiency of the stack, we have modified that notation to specify the operators *after* the numbers. Hence the term *Reverse Polish Notation*, or *RPN*.

The stack consists of four storage locations, called *registers*, which are “stacked” on top of each other. It is a work area for calculations. These registers—labeled X, Y, Z, and T—store and manipulate four current numbers. The “oldest” number is the one in the T-register (*top*).

T	0.0000
Z	0.0000
Y	0.0000
X	0.0000

The most “recent” number is in the X-register and is usually displayed.

You might have noticed that several functions’ names include an  $x$  or  $y$ . These letters refer to the values in the X- and Y-registers. For example,  raises the number in the Y-register to the power of the number in the X-register.

To clear all four of the stack registers to zero, press  .

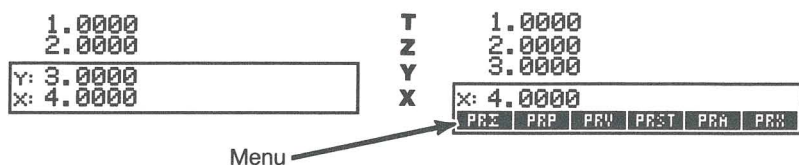


### Note

Each stack register can hold any type of data (a real number, Alpha string, complex number, or matrix). Examples in this chapter use real numbers; however, the stack works the same regardless of the type of data it contains.

## The Stack and the Display

Since the HP-42S has a two-line display, it is capable of displaying two numbers ( $x$  and  $y$ ) or one number ( $x$ ) and a menu.



## Reviewing the Stack ( $\boxed{\text{R}\downarrow}$ )

The  $\boxed{\text{R}\downarrow}$  (roll down) key lets you review the entire contents of the stack by “rolling” the contents downward, one register at a time.

Suppose the stack is filled with 1, 2, 3, 4 (press 1  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$  2  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$  3  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$  4). Pressing  $\boxed{\text{R}\downarrow}$  four times rolls the numbers all the way around and back to where they started:

T	1		4		3		2		1
Z	2		1		4		3		2
Y	3		2		1		4		3
X	4	$\boxed{\text{R}\downarrow}$	3	$\boxed{\text{R}\downarrow}$	2	$\boxed{\text{R}\downarrow}$	1	$\boxed{\text{R}\downarrow}$	4

Notice that the *contents* of the registers are shifted—the registers themselves maintain their positions.

## Exchanging x and y ( $\boxed{x\leftrightarrow y}$ )

Another key for manipulating the contents of the stack is  $\boxed{x\leftrightarrow y}$  (*x exchange y*). It swaps the contents of the X- and Y-registers without affecting the rest of the stack. The  $\boxed{x\leftrightarrow y}$  function is generally used to swap the order of numbers for a calculation.



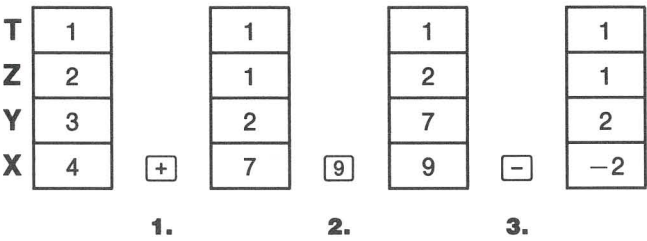
To calculate  $9 \div (13 + 8)$  you might press 13 **[ENTER]** 8 **[+]** 9 **[xzy]** **[÷]**. The **[xzy]** function swaps the two numbers so they are in the correct order for division.

## Arithmetic—How the Stack Does It

The contents of the stack move up automatically as new numbers enter the X-register (*lifting the stack*). The contents of the stack automatically move down when a function replaces two numbers ( $x$  and  $y$ ) with a single result in the X-register (*dropping the stack*).

Suppose the stack is still filled with the numbers 1, 2, 3, and 4. See how the contents of the stack lift and drop while calculating

$$3 + 4 - 9.$$



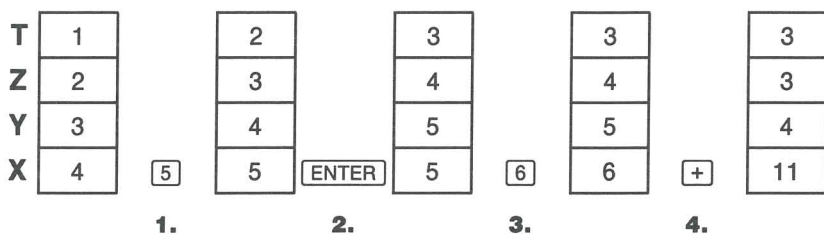
- 1.** The stack “drops” its contents. (The top register replicates its contents.)
  - 2.** The stack “lifts” its contents. (The top contents are “lost”.)
  - 3.** The stack drops.
- Notice that when the stack lifts, numbers are pushed off the top of the stack (out of the T-register) and are lost. Therefore, the stack memory is limited to four numbers.
  - Because of the automatic movement in the stack, you do not need to clear the display before starting a new calculation. “Old” results are just pushed up the stack.

- Generally, keying in a number causes the stack to lift. However, there are four functions that specifically *disable stack lift*. They are **ENTER**, **CLX**\*, **Σ+**, and **Σ-**. That is, a number keyed in immediately after one of these functions *replaces* the number in the X-register rather than pushing it up.

## How **ENTER** Works

In chapter 1 you learned that **ENTER** separates two numbers keyed in one after the other. In terms of the stack, how does it do this? Suppose the stack is again filled with 1, 2, 3, and 4. Now enter and add two new numbers:

$$5 + 6$$



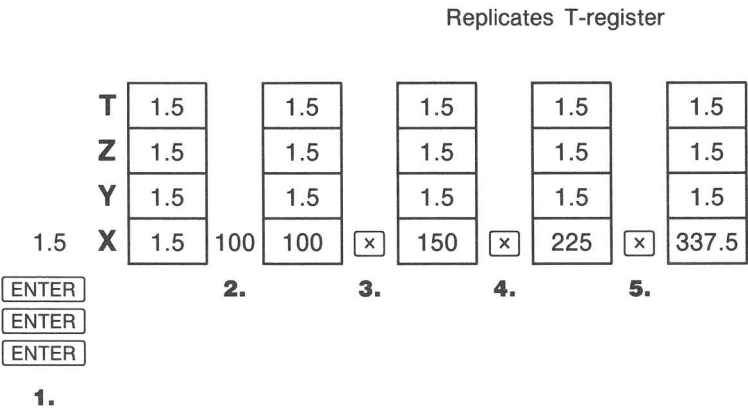
1. Lifts the stack.
2. Lifts the stack and replicates the X-register.
3. Does *not* lift the stack.
4. Drops the stack and replicates the T-register.

**ENTER** copies the contents of the X-register into the Y-register and *disables stack lift* so that the second number you enter *writes over* the copy of the first number in the X-register. The effect is simply to separate two numbers entered sequentially.

\* Remember, the **CLX** key sometimes functions as **CLX**. Refer to "Using the **CLX** Key" on page 25.

**Filling the Stack With a Constant.** Whenever the stack drops, the number in the T-register is duplicated in the Z-register. Therefore, you can completely fill the stack with a constant number and use that number repeatedly in calculations. Every time the stack drops, the constant is duplicated at the top of the stack.

**Example: Constant, Cumulative Growth.** Given a bacterial culture with a growth rate of 50% per day, how large would a population of 100 be at the end of 3 days?




1. Fills the stack with the growth rate.
2. Keys in the initial population.
3. Calculates the population after 1 day.
4. Calculates the population after 2 days.
5. Calculates the population after 3 days.

**Other Uses of the ENTER Key.** The primary purpose of the ENTER key is to separate two numbers entered sequentially for a calculation. ENTER can also be used to:

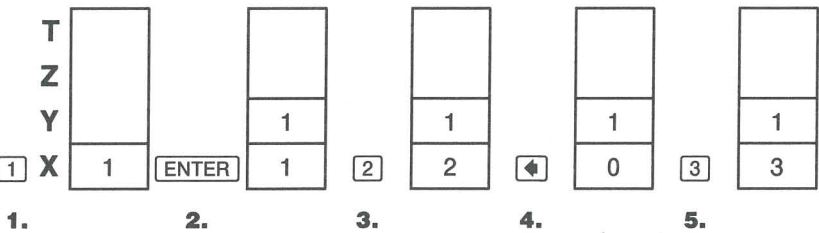
- Turn the cursor on or off in Alpha mode.
- Select the ALPHA menu when a function is prompting for a parameter.
- Complete an instruction after keying in a parameter.

# How CLX Works

To prevent an unwanted zero from being added to the stack, the **CLX** function (and  when it clears the X-register) disables stack lift. That is, **CLX** puts a zero in the X-register, but the next number entered writes over the zero.

This feature lets you correct mistakes without interfering with the current calculation. Since stack lift does not occur, the contents of the Y-, Z-, and T-registers are left unchanged.


For example, suppose you wanted to enter 1 and 3 but mistakenly entered 1 and 2. This is what you would do:




- 1. Lifts the stack.
- 2. Lifts the stack and replicates the X-register.
- 3. Overwrites the X-register.
- 4. Clears x by overwriting it with zero.
- 5. Overwrites x (replaces the zero.)



---







## The LAST X Register


The LAST X register is a companion to the stack—it holds the contents of the X-register used in the most recent numeric function. Pressing  **LASTx** recalls this value into the X-register. This ability to retrieve the “last x” has two main uses: correcting mistakes and reusing a number in a calculation.

## Using LASTx To Correct Mistakes







**Wrong One-Number Function.** If you execute the wrong one-number function, use  LASTx to retrieve the number so you can execute the correct function.

If you are in the middle of a chain calculation when you make the mistake, clear the X-register () before executing  LASTx. This clears the incorrect result and disables stack lift so that intermediate results in the stack are not lost.


**Example.** Suppose that you had just calculated  $4.7839^3 \times (3.879 \times 10^5)$  and wanted to find its square root () but pressed  by mistake. You don't have to start over! To find the correct result, just press   LASTx . ( is needed only if you want to prevent the incorrect result from being lifted into the Y-register.)

**Mistakes With Two-Number Functions.** If you make a mistake with a two-number function, you can correct it by using  LASTx and the *inverse* of the two-number function.

For mistakes with the *wrong function* or *wrong second number*:

1. Press  LASTx to recover the second number (the one in the X-register just before the operation).
2. Execute the inverse operation. (For example,  is the inverse of  and  is the inverse of .) This returns the number that was originally first. The second number is still in the LAST X register.
3. Execute the correct calculation:
  - If you had used the *wrong function*, press  LASTx again to restore the original stack contents. Now execute the correct function.
  - If you had used the *wrong second number*, key in the correct one and then execute the function.

For mistakes with the *wrong first number*:





1. Key in the correct first number.
2. Press  LASTx.
3. Execute the function again.

If the contents of the other stack registers are important, clear the X-register *first* to prevent the incorrect result from being lifted into the stack.



**Example.** Suppose you made an error while calculating

$$16 \times 19 = 304.$$

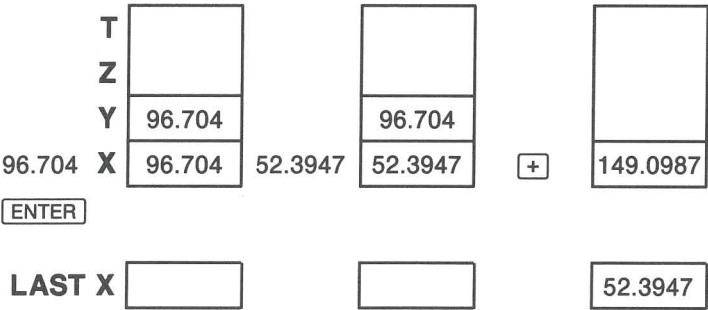
There are three kinds of mistakes you could have made:


Wrong Calculation	Mistake	Correction
16 [ENTER] 19 [-]	Wrong function.	[  ] [LASTx] [+]
		[  ] [LASTx] [x]
16 [ENTER] 18 [x]	Wrong second number.	[  ] [LASTx] [+]
		19 [x]
15 [ENTER] 19 [x]	Wrong first number.	16 [  ] [LASTx] [x]

### Using [LASTx] To Reuse Numbers

Recovering and reusing a number can be useful in short calculations that use the same number more than once. Since  [LASTx] recovers the last value that was used in a calculation, you can reuse the same number. Often, pressing  [LASTx] is quicker than keying the number in again.

**Example.** Calculate  $(96.704 + 52.3947) \div 52.3947$ . Remember to enter 52.3947 second so it can be reused.



T		
Z		
Y	149.0987	
 LASTx	X	52.3947
		÷
		2.8457

LAST X	52.3947	52.3947
--------	---------	---------

96.704 

Y: 96.7040  
X: 96.7040

52.3947 

Y: 0.0000  
X: 149.0987

 LASTx




Y: 149.0987  
X: 52.3947



Y: 0.0000  
X: 2.8457

**Example.** Two close stellar neighbors of Earth are Rigel Centaurus (4.3 light-years away) and Sirius (8.7 light-years away). Use  $c$ , the speed of light ( $9.5 \times 10^{15}$  meters per year), to convert the distances from the Earth to these stars into meters.

Enter the distance to Rigel Centaurus and multiply by the speed of light.

4.3  9.5  15 

Y: 2.8457  
X: 4.0850E16

The distance to Rigel Centaurus is  $4.085 \times 10^{16}$  meters.



Now, enter the distance to Sirius and recall the speed of light from the LAST X register.

8.7  LASTx

Y: 8.7000
X: 9.5000E15

Multiply to get the distance.



Y: 4.0850E16
X: 8.2650E16

The distance to Sirius is  $8.265 \times 10^{16}$  meters.

---

## Chain Calculations

The automatic lifting and dropping of the stack's contents let you retain intermediate results without storing or reentering them, and without using parentheses.







## Order of Calculation

In chapter 1 we recommended solving chain calculations by working from the innermost parentheses outward. You may choose to work problems in a left-to-right order. (However, since the stack can only hold four numbers at a time, some expressions may be too long to calculate from left to right.)

For example, in chapter 1 you calculated:

$$4 \div [14 + (7 \times 3) - 2]$$

by starting with the innermost parentheses ( $7 \times 3$ ) and working outward—just as you would with pencil and paper. The keystrokes were:

7  3  14  2  4  .

Working the problem from left-to-right, the solution would be:

4 [ENTER] 14 [ENTER] 7 [ENTER] 3 [x] [+] 2 [-] [÷],

which takes one additional keystroke. Notice that the first intermediate result is still the innermost parentheses:  $(7 \times 3)$ . The advantage of working a problem from left-to-right is that you don't have to use [x↔y] to reposition operands for noncommutative functions ([-] and [÷]).

The first method (starting with the innermost parentheses) is often preferred because:

- It takes fewer keystrokes.
- It requires fewer registers in the stack.

In summary, the stack gives you the flexibility to work problems in an order that best fits *your* needs.

## Exercises: More RPN Calculations

Here are some additional problems that you can work for more practice using RPN. As demonstrated above, there's more than one way to solve most problems. Therefore, the solutions shown below are not necessarily unique.

**Calculate:**  $(14 + 12) \times (18 - 12) \div (9 - 7)$

**Answer:** 78.0000

**A Solution:** 14 [ENTER] 12 [+] 18 [ENTER] 12 [-] [x] 9 [ENTER] 7 [-] [÷]

**Another Solution:** 14 [ENTER] 12 [+] 18 [LASTx] [-] [x] 9 [ENTER] 7 [-] [÷]

**Calculate:**  $23^2 - (13 \times 9) + 1/7$

**Answer:** 412.1429

**A Solution:** 23 [x<sup>2</sup>] 13 [ENTER] 9 [x] [-] 7 [1/x] [+]

**Another Solution:** 23 [ENTER] [x] 13 [ENTER] 9 [x] [-] 7 [1/x] [+]

**Calculate:**  $\sqrt{(5.4 \times 0.8) \div (12.5 - 0.7^3)}$

**Answer:** 0.5961

**A Solution:** 5.4 [ENTER] .8 [x] .7 [ENTER] 3 [y<sup>x</sup>] 12.5 [xzy] [-] [÷] [√x]

**Another Solution:** 5.4 [ENTER] .8 [x] 12.5 [ENTER] .7 [ENTER] 3 [y<sup>x</sup>] [-]  
[÷] [√x]

**Calculate:**  $\sqrt{\frac{8.33 \times (4 - 5.2) \div [(8.33 - 7.46) \times 0.32]}{4.3 \times (3.15 - 2.75) - (1.71 \times 2.01)}}$

**Answer:** 4.5728

**A Solution:** 4 [ENTER] 5.2 [-] 8.33 [x] [LASTx] 7.46 [-] .32 [x] [÷] 3.15  
[ENTER] 2.75 [-] 4.3 [x] 1.71 [ENTER] 2.01 [x] [-] [÷] [√x]

## Variables and Storage Registers

---

In the previous chapter, you learned how the calculator's stack provides temporary storage during calculations. For more permanent data storage, you can use variables and storage registers. In this chapter you will learn how to use **[STO]** (*store*) and **[RCL]** (*recall*) to:

- Copy data between the stack and variables or storage registers.
- Perform arithmetic with variables and registers.
- Directly access each of the stack registers.

In addition, you'll see how the **[ASTO]** (*Alpha store*) and **[ARCL]** (*Alpha recall*) functions are used to copy data between the Alpha register and variables or registers.

---

### Storing and Recalling Data

The X-register is used in all store and recall operations. **[STO]** copies data *from* the X-register into a variable or register. **[RCL]** recalls data *into* the X-register from a variable or register.

When you press **[STO]** or **[RCL]**, the calculator displays a prompt (**STO \_\_** or **RCL \_\_**) and a menu of variable names. To complete the instruction, you must supply one of the following parameters to indicate what you want to store or recall:

- A variable name.
- A storage register number.
- A stack register.

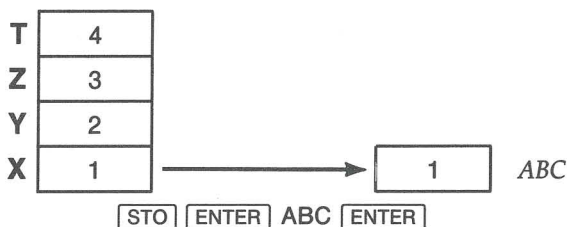
## Variables

Variables are *named* storage locations. Each variable can hold any type of data, from a single number to a large, two-dimensional matrix of complex numbers. The number of variables stored in the calculator is limited only by the amount of memory available.

### To store data into a variable:

1. Press **[STO]**.
2. Select the variable from the catalog (automatically displayed), or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu:
  - *Using the variable catalog:* If the variable name you want already exists, press the corresponding menu key. Data previously stored in the variable is overwritten with the new data.
  - *Using the ALPHA menu:*
    - a. Press **[ENTER]** or **[ALPHA]** to select the ALPHA menu.
    - b. Type the variable name (one to seven characters).\*
    - c. Press **[ENTER]** or **[ALPHA]** to complete the name.

For example, to store a copy of the X-register into a variable named ABC, press **[STO]** **[ENTER]** ABC **[ENTER]**. If ABC already exists, press **[STO]** **[ABC]**.

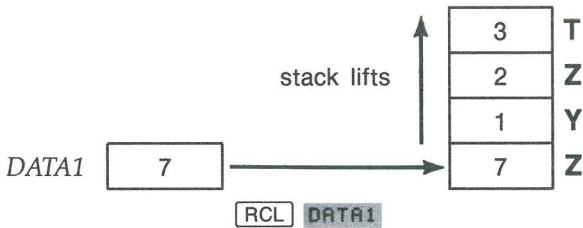


### To recall data from a variable:

1. Press **[RCL]**.
2. Select the variable from the catalog, or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu. (Refer to step 2 above.)

\* Instructions for using the ALPHA menu are on page 37.

For example, to recall a copy of the data in the variable *DATA1*, press **RCL** **DATA1** (assuming *DATA1* already exists).



### Storage Registers

Storage registers are numbered storage locations that each hold a single number. Initially, the HP-42S has 25 storage registers (designated  $R_{00}$ – $R_{24}$ ), each containing a zero. You can change the number of storage registers with the **SIZE** function (page 64).

#### To store data into a storage register:

1. Press **STO**.
2. Key in the register number: two digits *or* a single digit followed by **ENTER**. Data previously stored in the register is overwritten with the new data.

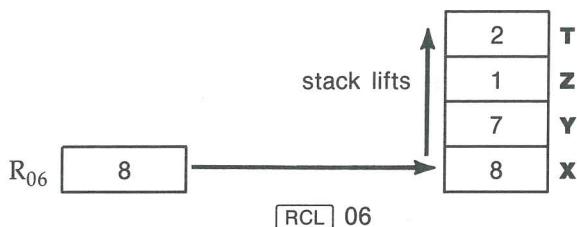
For example, to store a copy of the number in the X-register into  $R_{02}$ , press **STO** 02 *or* **STO** 2 **ENTER**.



## To recall data from a storage register:

1. Press **[RCL]**.
2. Key in the register number: two digits *or* a single digit followed by **[ENTER]**.

For example, to recall a copy of the number in  $R_{06}$ , press **[RCL]** 06 *or* **[RCL]** 6 **[ENTER]**.



---

## Storing and Recalling Stack Registers

You can store and recall data directly to registers in the stack using *stack addressing*.

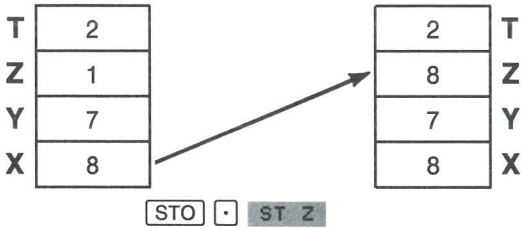
### To store data directly into a stack register:

1. Press **[STO]**.
2. Press **[ ]** to display the stack menu.
3. Press *one* of the following menu keys:
  - **[ST L]** to copy the data into the LAST X register.
  - **[ST X]** to copy the data into the X-register.\*
  - **[ST Y]** to copy the data into the Y-register.
  - **[ST Z]** to copy the data into the Z-register.
  - **[ST T]** to copy the data into the T-register.

\* Although **[STO]** **[ ]** **[ST X]** is a valid instruction, storing a copy of the X-register into itself is of little value.



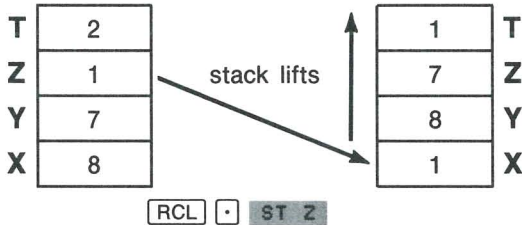
For example, to copy the data in the X-register into the Z-register, press **[STO] [.] [ST Z]**.



**To recall data directly from a stack register:**

1. Press **[RCL]**.
2. Press **[.]** to display the stack menu.
3. Press *one* of the following menu keys:
  - **[ST L]** to copy data from the LAST X register (equivalent to executing **[LASTx]**.)
  - **[ST X]** to copy data from the X-register. (This is similar to executing **[ENTER]** except that stack lift is enabled.)
  - **[ST Y]** to copy data from the Y-register
  - **[ST Z]** to copy data from the Z-register.
  - **[ST T]** to copy data from the T-register (equivalent to executing the **R↑** function).

For example, to recall the data in the Z-register into the X-register, press **[RCL] [.] [ST Z]**.



---

## Data Types

The HP-42S uses four data types. You can identify a type of data by the way it is displayed:

- *Real numbers* are displayed using the current display format. Some real numbers are displayed with exponents of 10.

Examples: 1,024.0000  
3.1600E4

- *Complex numbers* are displayed in two parts, separated with *i* or *∠* (depending on the current coordinate mode). If a complex number is too long to be displayed in the current display mode, it is automatically displayed in ENG 2 format.

Examples: 12.1314 i15.1617 (Rectangular mode)  
55.0300 ∠90.0000 (Polar mode)

- *Alpha strings* (in the stack) are displayed with surrounding quotation marks. The quotation marks are not part of the string.

Examples: "String"  
"JIM"

- *Matrices* are displayed with brackets ([ and ]). The dimensions of the matrix are shown (*rows* × *columns*) and complex matrices are indicated with Cpx.

Examples: [ 3×2 Matrix ]  
[ 5×7 Cpx Matrix ]

**Where Data Can Be Stored.** You can store any type of data into a stack register (X, Y, Z, T, or LAST X) or variable. However, individual storage registers may only contain a single number. That is, you cannot store a matrix into a storage register. Further, you cannot store a complex number into a storage register unless the entire set of registers is converted to complex (page 98).

An Alpha string (up to six characters) can be stored into a variable, stack register, or storage register. Each element in a real matrix may also contain an Alpha string. (Alpha strings are not allowed in complex matrices.)

# Arithmetic With STO and RCL

By combining STO and RCL with the basic arithmetic operators (+, -, ×, and ÷) you can do arithmetic using stored values without first recalling them to the stack.

- Arithmetic with the STO function changes only the contents of the variable or register; the stack is not affected.

For example, you could triple the value in the variable *ABC* by pressing 3 STO × ABC.

- Arithmetic with the RCL function calculates the result in the X-register. The contents of the variable or register and the other stack registers are not affected.

For example, you could subtract the number in *R*<sub>12</sub> from the number in the X-register by pressing RCL - 12.

Instruction	Result	Location of Result
<span>STO</span> <span>+</span> <i>destination</i>	<i>destination</i> + <i>x</i>	<i>destination</i>
<span>STO</span> <span>-</span> <i>destination</i>	<i>destination</i> - <i>x</i>	<i>destination</i>
<span>STO</span> <span>×</span> <i>destination</i>	<i>destination</i> × <i>x</i>	<i>destination</i>
<span>STO</span> <span>÷</span> <i>destination</i>	<i>destination</i> ÷ <i>x</i>	<i>destination</i>
<span>RCL</span> <span>+</span> <i>source</i>	<i>x</i> + <i>source</i>	X-register
<span>RCL</span> <span>-</span> <i>source</i>	<i>x</i> - <i>source</i>	X-register
<span>RCL</span> <span>×</span> <i>source</i>	<i>x</i> × <i>source</i>	X-register
<span>RCL</span> <span>÷</span> <i>source</i>	<i>x</i> ÷ <i>source</i>	X-register

Note that the *destination* and *source* may be any stack register, storage register, or variable. *x* denotes the contents of the X-register.

**Recall Arithmetic and LAST X.** RCL arithmetic saves the *x*-value in the LAST X register just as one-number functions do. Note how a normal recall instruction followed by arithmetic compares to recall arithmetic:

- 100 **RCL** 03 **÷** recalls the contents of  $R_{03}$  and then divides that value into 100. The divisor,  $R_{03}$ , is saved in the LAST X register. Since the stack lifts when you execute **RCL**, the value in the T-register is lost.
- 100 **RCL** **÷** 03 calculates the same result. However, the contents of LAST X are different. The numerator, 100, is saved in LAST X because it was the last  $x$ -value used in a calculation. The source,  $R_{03}$ , is never recalled to the stack. Since the stack does not lift, the value in the T-register is not lost.

---

## Managing Variables

### Clearing Variables

To clear a variable from memory:

1. Press **■** **CLEAR** **■** **CLV** .
2. Select the variable from the catalog, or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu.

### Using the Variable Catalogs

When you create a variable, the HP-42S adds that variable's name to the appropriate catalog. You can think of each catalog as a file holding variables of the same data type. To display a catalog, press



**■** **CATALOG** and then:




- **REAL** for variables containing real numbers or Alpha strings.
- **CPX** for variables containing complex numbers.
- **MAT** for variables containing matrices.

To recall a variable from a catalog, select the catalog, and then press the corresponding menu key.

## Printing Variables



### To print the contents of a single variable:

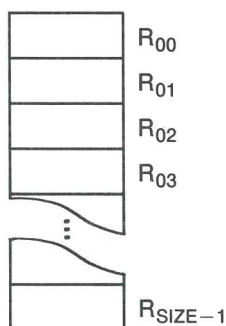
1. Press  **PRINT**  **PRV** .
2. Select the variable from the catalog, or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu.

**To print a complete list of variable names:** Press  **PRINT**  **PRUSR** (*print user*). The PRUSR function prints all variable names and global program labels. The variable names are printed first, so if you're not interested in the program labels, press  to stop the listing.

---

## Managing Storage Registers

The storage registers are maintained in the HP-42S as a matrix named *REGS*. Each element in the matrix is a single storage register that, as you've already seen, can be stored to or recalled from with  and . Because *REGS* is a variable, you can manipulate the entire set of storage registers as a single matrix. (Refer to chapter 14 for more information on matrix operations.)



## Changing the Number of Storage Registers (SIZE)

The SIZE function changes the number of storage registers available. The default size is 25 registers ( $R_{00}$ – $R_{24}$ ). The maximum number of storage registers is limited by the amount of available memory. However, the **[STO]** and **[RCL]** functions can only *directly* access registers  $R_{00}$  through  $R_{99}$ . To store and recall data in registers numbered above 99, you must use *indirect addressing* (page 74).

### To change the SIZE:

1. Press **[MODES]** **[▼]** **[SIZE]**.
2. Key in the number of registers. Use one, two, or three digits followed by **[ENTER]** or key in all four digits.

For example, to set the SIZE to 10 registers, press: **[MODES]** **[▼]** **[SIZE]** 10 **[ENTER]**.

You can also change the number of storage registers by redimensioning the REGS matrix. Refer to “Redimensioning a Matrix” in chapter 14.

## Clearing Storage Registers

To clear all of the storage registers to zero, press **[CLEAR]** **[▼]** **[CLR]**.

To clear a single storage register to zero, store zero in it. For example, to clear  $R_{10}$ , press 0 **[STO]** 10.

## Printing Storage Registers

To print all of the storage registers, press **[PRINT]** **[PRV]** **[REGS]**. You can stop the listing at any time by pressing **[R/S]**. Note that the registers are printed as a matrix—element 1:1 corresponds to  $R_{00}$ .

For more information, refer to chapter 7, “Printing.”



# Storing and Recalling Alpha Data

When the calculator is in Alpha mode, the **[STO]** and **[RCL]** keys are redefined as **[ASTO]** (*Alpha store*) and **[ARCL]** (*Alpha recall*). These Alpha functions are used to copy data to and from the Alpha register in the same way **[STO]** and **[RCL]** are used to move data to and from the X-register.

There are several other functions for working with Alpha data. Refer to “Working With Alpha Data” in chapter 9.

## Storing Alpha Data (ASTO)

The ASTO function copies the six left-most characters in the Alpha register into a variable or register. Variables containing Alpha strings are located in the real-variable catalog (**[CATALOG]** **[REAL]**).

**Example: Storing Alpha Data.** Type a string of characters into the Alpha register and store the string (the first six characters) into R<sub>03</sub>. Turn Alpha mode on. (If you worked the last example in chapter 1, the string *The HP-42S*, may still be in the Alpha register. It disappears as soon as you start typing a new string.)

ALPHA

The HP-42S.  
ABCDE FGHI JKLM NOPQ RSTUV WXYZ

Type in the string **RESULT=**. (The keystrokes are **[RSTUV]** **[R]** **[ABCDE]** **[E]** **[RSTUV]** **[S]** **[RSTUV]** **[U]** **[JKLM]** **[L]** **[RSTUV]** **[T]** **[ ]** **[<]** **[=]** **[>]** **[ ]** **[=]** **[.]**.)

RESULT=

RESULT=  
[ [ ] [←→] [≡] [>] MATH PUNC MISC

Now, store the string into R<sub>03</sub>. (Remember, to execute the ASTO function, press **[STO]** when Alpha mode is on.)

ASTO 03

RESULT=  
[ [ ] [←→] [≡] [>] MATH PUNC MISC



Exit Alpha mode and recall  $R_{03}$  into the X-register.

[EXIT] [RCL] 03

```
Y: 0.0000
X: "RESULT"
```

This is what an Alpha string looks like when it is in the stack. The = character is not included because strings stored in variables and registers are limited to six characters.

## Recalling Alpha Data (ARCL)

The ARCL function copies data in a variable or register into the Alpha register. If the Alpha register already contains a string, the recalled data is appended to it.

If you recall a number into the Alpha register, the ARCL function converts it into Alpha characters using the current display format.

**Example: Recalling Data to the Alpha Register.** Calculate  $5^3$  and append the result to the Alpha register (which should contain RESULT= from the previous example). Remember, to execute the ARCL function, press [RCL] when Alpha mode is on.

5 [ENTER] 3 [y<sup>x</sup>] [ALPHA]

```
RESULT=
ABCDE FGHI JKLM NOPQ RSTUV WXYZ
```

[ARCL] [.] [ST X]

```
RESULT=125.0000
ABCDE FGHI JKLM NOPQ RSTUV WXYZ
```

Display the contents of the Alpha register using the AVIEW function.

[PGM.FCN] [AVIEW]

```
RESULT=125.0000
X: 125.0000
```

The viewed information can be cleared from the display like any other message.



[←]

```
Y: "RESULT"
X: 125.0000
```

## Executing Functions

---

The HP-42S has over 600 built-in functions—far too many to fit them all on the keyboard. Because of this, there are several ways to execute functions. You’ve already learned how to execute functions that appear on the keyboard and in menus. In this chapter you will learn three additional ways to execute functions:

- *Using the function catalog.* Press  **CATALOG**  **FCN** to display a menu containing all of the calculator’s functions. The functions are arranged in alphabetical order with special characters at the end.
- *Using the CUSTOM menu.* You can create a menu containing the functions, programs, and variables you use most often.
- *Using the **[XEQ]** (execute) key.* You can execute any calculator function by pressing **[XEQ]** and then typing the function name using the ALPHA menu.






You will also learn how to:

- Specify a parameter when a function prompts for additional information.
- *Preview* an instruction by holding down a key.





---

## Using the Function Catalog

### To execute a function using the function catalog:

1. Press  **CATALOG**  **FCN** . (If you are planning on executing more than one function, you can prevent automatic exiting by selecting the CATALOG menu twice:  **CATALOG**  **CATALOG**  **FCN** .)

2. Find the function you want to execute:

- Use the  and  keys to move up and down through the menu. If you hold either of these keys down, they repeat so you can scroll quickly through the menu.
- To return to the top of the catalog, press  .

3. To execute a function, press the corresponding menu key.

**Example: Using the Function Catalog.** Use the ASINH (*hyperbolic arc sine*) function to determine the hyperbolic arc sine of 15.

15

Y: 0.0000  
X: 15\_

X: 15.0000  
RES ACOS ACOSH ADY AGRA AIP

Use the  key to search the catalog until you find ASINH.

X: 15.0000  
ARCL ARCT ASHF ASIN ASINH ASGN



Y: 0.0000  
X: 3.4023

The hyperbolic arc sine of 15 is 3.4023 (to four decimal places).

---

## Using the CUSTOM Menu

The CUSTOM menu contains 18 blank menu labels. Each label can be redefined by assigning the name of a function, program, or variable. Therefore, you can tailor your own menu to include functions, programs, and variables you use most often.

## Making CUSTOM Menu Key Assignments

To make a key assignment:

1. Press  .

2. Use a catalog or the ALPHA menu to specify the function, program, or variable you want to assign:

■ *Using a catalog:*

- a. Press **FCN** , **PGM** , **REAL** , **CPX** , or **MAT** .
- b. Press the menu key corresponding to the item you want to assign.

■ *Using the ALPHA menu:*

- a. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to select the ALPHA menu.
  - b. Type the name of the function, program, or variable.
  - c. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to complete the name.
3. Press the menu key for the label to be assigned. There are 18 menu labels in the CUSTOM menu (numbered 01 through 18). Press **▼** to display the second row (labels 07 through 12). Press **▼** again to display the third row (labels 13 through 18). If you press a key for a label that already has an assignment, the new assignment replaces the previous one.

**Example: Using the CUSTOM Menu.** Assign the ACOSH (*hyperbolic arc cosine*) function to the first key in the CUSTOM menu and calculate the arc hyperbolic cosine of 27.

**ASSIGN** **FCN**

ASSIGN " _ "					
ABS	ACOS	ACOSH	ADV	AGRA	AMP

The ACOSH function is in the first row of the function catalog.

**ACOSH**

ASSIGN "ACOSH" TO _					

Now press the first key in the CUSTOM menu (**Σ+**).

**Σ+**

x: 3.4023					
ACOSH					

The assignment is ready to use.

27 **ACOSH**

x: 3.9886					
ACOSH					

Thus, the arc hyperbolic cosine of 27 is 3.9886 (to four decimal places).

Unlike other function menus, CUSTOM does not automatically exit after each use. Press **EXIT**.

## Clearing CUSTOM Menu Key Assignments

**To clear a single key assignment:**

1. Press **ASSIGN**.
2. Press **ENTER ENTER** or **ALPHA ALPHA**. This terminates the prompt for a name.
3. Press the CUSTOM menu key for the label whose assignment you want to clear.

**To clear all key assignments:**

1. Press **CLEAR** **▼** to select the second row of the CLEAR menu.
2. Press **CLKY**.

---

## Using the **XEQ** Key

**To execute a function with **XEQ**:**

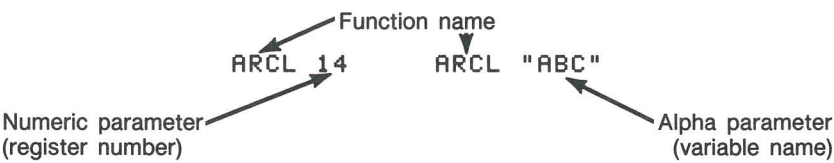
1. Press **XEQ**.
2. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to select the ALPHA menu.
3. Type the name of the function.
4. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to complete the entry.

For example, you can execute the BEEP function by pressing **XEQ ENTER BEEP ENTER**.\*

\* If you are not sure how to type BEEP, refer to the instructions for using the ALPHA menu on page 37.

# Specifying Parameters

Many functions require a parameter to specify exactly what the function is to do. For example, the ARCL function interprets a numeric parameter as a register number and an Alpha parameter as a variable name. Refer to the table below.



## Functions That Require One Parameter

Functions	Numeric Parameter	Alpha Parameter
ARCL, ASTO, DSE, INPUT, ISG, RCL, STO, VIEW, X<>	Register number.*	Variable name.
ΣREG	Register number.*	-
CLV, DIM, EDITN, INDEX, INTEG, MVAR, PRV, SOLVE	-	Variable name.
CF, FC?, FC?C, FS?, FS?C, SF	Flag number.	-
ENG, FIX, SCI	Number of digits.	-
GTO, LBL†	Numeric program label.	Alpha program label.
XEQ	Numeric program label.	Function name or Alpha program label.
CLP,† PGMINT, PGMSLV, PRP†	-	Alpha program label.
* Functions that accept register numbers also accept stack registers as parameters. Refer to "Specifying Stack Registers as Parameters" below.		
† Indirect addressing cannot be used with this function.		



## Functions That Require One Parameter (Continued)

Functions	Numeric Parameter	Alpha Parameter
DEL, <sup>†</sup> LIST <sup>†</sup>	Number of program lines.	-
SIZE <sup>†</sup>	Number of storage registers.	-
TONE	Tone number.	-

\* Functions that accept register numbers also accept stack registers as parameters. Refer to "Specifying Stack Registers as Parameters" below.

<sup>†</sup> Indirect addressing cannot be used with this function.

## Functions That Require Two Parameters

Functions	First Parameter	Second Parameter
ASSIGN	Function name, Alpha program label, or variable name. <sup>†</sup>	Key number (01 through 18). <sup>†</sup>
KEYG, KEYX	Key number (1 through 9). <sup>†</sup>	Program label (local or global).

<sup>†</sup> Cannot be specified using indirect addressing.

## Numeric Parameters

Functions that accept numeric parameters display a cursor for each digit expected. For example, the **FIX** function prompts you with **FIX \_\_**, which takes two digits.

To complete an instruction with a numeric parameter:

- Key a digit for each position marked by a cursor. Include leading zeros if there are any.
- Or, key in fewer digits and complete the function by pressing **ENTER**.

For example, you can set the SIZE to 9 storage registers by pressing **MODES** **▼** **SIZE** followed by 9 **ENTER** or 0009.



## Alpha Parameters

If the function accepts Alpha parameters, you can select the ALPHA menu by pressing **ENTER** or **ALPHA**. After typing the parameter, press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to complete the instruction. Digits typed while the ALPHA menu is displayed are treated as Alpha characters.

Many functions that take Alpha parameters automatically display an appropriate catalog menu. If the parameter you need already exists, select it by pressing the corresponding menu key.

For example, when you execute **STO** the calculator displays a catalog of all variables currently stored in the calculator. If there are more than six entries in the catalog, the ▼ annunciator indicates that you can use ▼ and ▲ to display the additional rows of the catalog menu.

## Specifying Stack Registers as Parameters

Any function that uses a numbered storage register can also access any of the stack registers (X, Y, Z, T, and LAST X).

### To specify a stack register as a parameter:

1. Execute the function. (For example, press **STO**.)
2. Press **□**.
3. Specify which register you want to address:
  - **ST L** for the LAST X register.
  - **ST X** for the X-register.
  - **ST Y** for the Y-register.
  - **ST Z** for the Z-register.
  - **ST T** for the T-register.

Refer to page 59 for examples using stack parameters.

# Indirect Addressing—Parameters Stored Elsewhere

Parameters for many functions can be specified using *indirect addressing*. That is, rather than entering the parameter itself as part of the instruction, you supply the variable, storage register, or stack register that contains the actual parameter.

Indirect addressing is particularly useful in programs when the parameter for a function is calculated.

## To specify a parameter using indirect addressing:

1. Execute the function.
2. Press  $\square$ . If the calculator displays `IND __` after the function name, skip to step 4.
3. Press `IND`.
4. Specify where the actual parameter is located:
  - *In a variable.* Press a menu key to select the variable (the real-variable catalog is automatically displayed if there are any real variables) or type the name of the variable using the ALPHA menu.
  - *In a storage register.* Key in the register number (two digits or a single digit followed by `[ENTER]`).
  - *In a stack register.* Press  $\square$  followed by `ST L`, `ST X`, `ST Y`, `ST Z`, or `ST T`.



### Note

Alpha parameters specified indirectly are limited to six characters because Alpha strings stored in variables and registers are limited to six characters.

**Example: Indirect Addressing Using a Variable.** Store 3 into ABC. Then store  $\sqrt{7}$  in  $R_{03}$  using indirect addressing.

3 `[STO]` `[ENTER]` ABC `[ENTER]`

Y:	3.9886
X:	3.0000

7  $\sqrt{x}$

Y:	3.0000
X:	2.6458

**STO** **.** **IND** **ABC**

Y: 3.0000  
X: 2.6458

To see that the instruction was successful, recall the contents of R<sub>03</sub>.

**RCL** 03

Y: 2.6458  
X: 2.6458

## Exercises: Specifying Parameters

**Task:** Set the display format to two decimal places.

**Keystrokes:** **DISP** **FIX** 02

**Task:** Set the display format to engineering notation using the number of digits specified in the X-register.

**Keystrokes:** **DISP** **ENG** **.** **.** **ST X**

**Task:** Store a copy of the X-register into the variable or storage register specified in the Y-register.

**Keystrokes:** **STO** **.** **IND** **.** **ST Y**

**Task:** Copy the first six characters of the Alpha register into the X-register. (In Alpha mode, the **STO** key executes the ASTO function.)

**Keystrokes:** **ALPHA** **ASTO** **.** **ST X**

**Task:** Append a copy of the data in the T-register to the contents of the Alpha register. (In Alpha mode, the **RCL** key executes the ARCL function.)

**Keystrokes:** **ALPHA** **ARCL** **.** **ST T**

**Task:** Test the flag specified by the number in the variable *F* (assuming *F* already exists).

**Keystrokes:** **FLAGS** **FS?** **.** **F**

---

# Function Preview and NULL

When you hold down a key that executes a function, the name of the function is displayed. This is a *preview* of the function.

If you hold the key down for about a second, the word NULL replaces the function name in the display and the function is not executed. If you release the key before NULL is displayed, the instruction is executed.

For example, press and hold the TAN key.

TAN (hold down)

TAN  
x: 2.6458

NULL  
x: 2.6458

The NULL message remains in the display until you release the key and the TAN function is not executed.

(release)

y: 2.6458  
x: 2.6458

You can preview instructions that include parameters by holding down the last key in the sequence that executes the instruction.

15 STO 02 (hold down the 2 key)

STO 02  
x: 15.0000

NULL  
x: 15.0000

(release)

y: 2.6458  
x: 15.0000

Since the instruction was aborted, the data in R<sub>02</sub> was not overwritten.

## Numeric Functions

---

Most of the functions built into the HP-42S are for numeric calculations. This chapter describes numeric functions for:

- General mathematics.
- Percent and percent change.
- Trigonometric calculations and conversions.
- Altering parts of numbers.
- Probability.
- Hyperbolics.

Many of the functions presented in this chapter do not appear on the HP-42S keyboard. The preceding chapter, “Executing Functions,” describes how to execute functions that are not on the keyboard or in a menu.

Remember, there are two types of numeric functions:

- *One-number* functions, which replace the number in the X-register with a result (page 29).
- *Two-number* functions, which replace the numbers in the X- and Y-registers with a result and drop the stack (page 30).

---

## General Mathematical Functions

The following table summarizes the general mathematical functions on the HP-42S keyboard. The Alpha name for each function is displayed when you hold down the key or when the function is entered into a program.

## One-Number Functions

To Calculate	Press	Alpha Name
Negative of $x$ .	$\boxed{+/-}$	$+/-$
Reciprocal of $x$ .	$\boxed{1/x}$	1/X
Square root of $x$ .	$\boxed{\sqrt{x}}$	SQRT
Square of $x$ .	$\boxed{x^2}$	X $\uparrow$ 2
Common logarithm of $x$ .	$\boxed{\text{LOG}}$	LOG
Common exponential of $x$ .	$\boxed{10^x}$	10 $\uparrow$ X
Natural logarithm of $x$ .	$\boxed{\text{LN}}$	LN
Natural exponential of $x$ .	$\boxed{e^x}$	E $\uparrow$ X

## Two-Number Functions

To Calculate	Press	Alpha Name
Sum of $x$ and $y$ ( $x + y$ ).	$\boxed{+}$	$+$
Difference of $x$ and $y$ ( $y - x$ ).	$\boxed{-}$	$-$
Product of $x$ and $y$ ( $x \times y$ ).	$\boxed{\times}$	$\times$
Quotient of $x$ and $y$ ( $y \div x$ ).	$\boxed{\div}$	$\div$
$y$ to the $x$ ( $y^x$ ).	$\boxed{y^x}$	Y $\uparrow$ X

**Example: Calculating a Cube Root.** Calculate  $\sqrt[3]{14}$ . Since this can be expressed as an exponent ( $14^{1/3}$ ), use the  $\boxed{y^x}$  function.

14  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$  3

Y: 14.0000  
X: 3\_

$\boxed{1/x}$

Y: 14.0000  
X: 0.3333

$\boxed{y^x}$

Y: 0.0000  
X: 2.4101



The cube root of 14 is 2.4101 (to four decimal places).

---

## Percentages

The percentage functions are special two-number functions because, unlike other two-number functions, the stack does not drop when the result is returned to the X-register.

### Simple Percent

The percent function ( ) calculates  $x\%$  of  $y$ . For example, to calculate 12% of 300:

300  12  

Y: 300.0000
X: 36.0000

Since the original value is preserved in the Y-register, you can easily calculate another percentage of the same number. Clear the X-register and calculate 25% of 300.

 25  

Y: 300.0000
X: 75.0000

The preservation of the  $y$ -value is also useful if you want to add it to the calculated percentage.



Y: 2.4101
X: 375.0000

This result is 300 plus 25% of 300 (or 125% of 300).

### Percent Change

The %CH (*percent change*) function calculates the percentage of change from  $y$  to  $x$ .

**Example: Calculating a Percent Change.** The cost of blouses at Sonja's Boutique recently rose from \$24.99 to \$26.99. What was the percentage increase?

24.99  26.99

Y: 24.9900
X: 26.99_



The price increased slightly more than 8%.

## Trigonometry

### Setting Trigonometric Modes

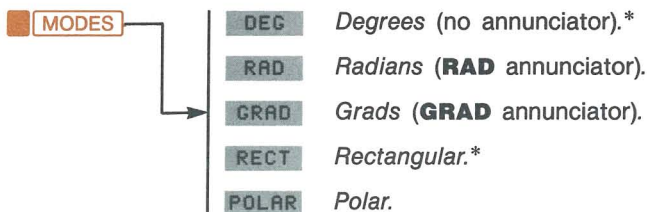
The first row of the MODES menu (MODES) shows two sets of modes:

- The *angular mode* tells the HP-42S what unit of measure to assume for numbers used with trigonometric functions.

$$360 \text{ degrees} = 2\pi \text{ radians} = 400 \text{ grads}$$

- The *coordinate mode* indicates how complex numbers are displayed—rectangular or polar notation. Refer to chapter 6 for a complete description of complex numbers.


To change a mode, press the corresponding menu key.



### Trigonometric Functions

To calculate the sine, cosine, or tangent of an angle, use the trigonometric functions on the keyboard. For example, to calculate the sine of 30°, press 30 SIN.

\* Default setting.

To calculate an angle, use the inverse trigonometric functions on the keyboard. For example, to calculate the angle that produces a sine of 0.866, press .866  **ASIN** (*arc sine*).

The trigonometric functions (including the inverse functions) observe the current angular mode for all calculations.

**Example: Using the COS Function.** Show that the cosine of  $(5/7)\pi$  radians and the cosine of  $128.57^\circ$  are the same (to four decimal places). Start by setting Radians mode (**RAD** turns on).

 **MODES**  **RAD**

Y: 24.9900  
X: 8.0032

Calculate  $(5/7)\pi$ .

5  7   

Y: 8.0032  
X: 2.2440

Calculate the cosine of  $(5/7)\pi$ .

 **COS**

Y: 8.0032  
X: -0.6235

Now, switch to Degrees mode (**RAD** turns off).

 **MODES**  **DEG**

Y: 8.0032  
X: -0.6235

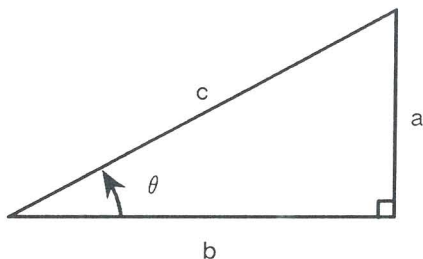
Calculate the cosine of  $128.57^\circ$ .

128.57  **COS**

Y: -0.6235  
X: -0.6235

When you're done, both results are in the display for you to compare.

**Example: Calculating an Angle.** The angle  $\theta$  in the following triangle can be determined by using the *arc* (inverse) trigonometric functions.



$$\theta = \arcsin(a/c) = \arccos(b/c) = \arctan(a/b)$$

Suppose  $a = 4$  and  $c = 8$ . What is  $\theta$ ?

4  8

Y: -0.6235  
X: 0.5000

Y: -0.6235  
X: 30.0000

The angle  $\theta$  is  $30^\circ$ .

## The Conversion Functions

The first row of the CONVERT menu () contains six functions for converting trigonometric units or coordinates.

- Radians to degrees.
- Degrees to radians.
- Hours-minutes-seconds to hours.
- Hours to hours-minutes-seconds.
- Polar to rectangular.
- Rectangular to polar.

## Converting Between Degrees and Radians

The  $\rightarrow$ DEG (*to degrees*) function converts a real number in the X-register from radians into decimal degrees. Conversely, the  $\rightarrow$ RAD (*to radians*) function converts a real number in the X-register from decimal degrees into radians. (The current angular mode is ignored by these two functions.)

For example, convert 0.5 radians to degrees.

.5  **CONVERT**   $\rightarrow$ DEG

Y: 30.0000
X: 28.6479

Convert  $30^\circ$  to radians.

30  **CONVERT**   $\rightarrow$ RAD

Y: 28.6479
X: 0.5236

## Using the Hours-Minutes-Seconds Format

The HP-42S has four functions for working with numbers expressed in hours-minutes-seconds format. You may use this format for time values (*H.MMSSss*) or angles expressed in degrees (*D.MMSSss*). For example, the following numbers could represent the time 15:25:18.98 or the angle  $15^\circ 25' 18.98''$ :



**Converting Between Formats.** Values for time (in hours) or angles (in degrees) can be converted between decimal-fraction form and hours-minutes-seconds form using the one-number functions  $\rightarrow$ HR (*to decimal hours*) and  $\rightarrow$ HMS (*to hours-minutes-seconds*).

For example, convert 1.25 hours to hours-minutes-seconds format.

1.25  **CONVERT**   $\rightarrow$ HMS

Y: 0.5236
X: 1.1500

Executing  $\rightarrow$ HR would change 1.1500 (that is, 1:15:00 or  $1^\circ 15' 00''$ ) back to 1.2500.

**Arithmetic With Minutes and Seconds.** To add and subtract time (or angle) values in hours-minutes-seconds form, use the HMS+ (*hours-minutes-seconds, add*) and HMS− (*hours-minutes-seconds, subtract*) functions.

For example, if a meeting started at 9:47 a.m. and adjourned at 1:02 p.m., how long was the meeting? Enter the two times in hours-minutes-seconds format. (Enter 1:02 p.m. as 13:02.)

13.02 [ENTER] 9.47

Y: 13.0200  
X: 9.47\_

Execute HMS− using the function catalog.

[CATALOG] [FCN]

Use [▼] and [▲] to find the HMS− function. (Remember, these keys repeat if you hold them down.) When you find the function, execute it by pressing the corresponding menu key.

[HMS−]

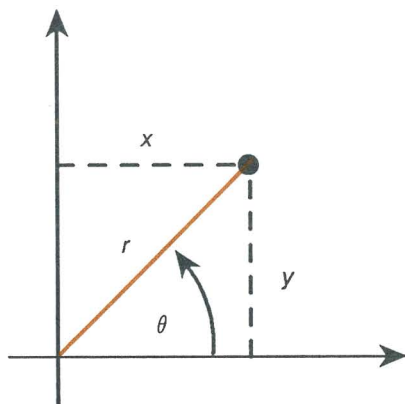
Y: 1.1500  
X: 3.1500

The meeting lasted 3 hours and 15 minutes.

To multiply or divide using an hours-minutes-seconds value, first convert the number to decimal hours ([CONVERT] [→HR]), then perform the arithmetic. If you need the result expressed in hours-minutes-seconds format, convert it back ([CONVERT] [→HMS]).

## Coordinate Conversions (Polar, Rectangular)

The coordinate conversion functions are →REC (*to rectangular*) and →POL (*to polar*). The rectangular coordinates ( $x,y$ ) and the polar coordinates ( $r,\theta$ ) are measured as shown in the illustration below. The angle  $\theta$  is measured in the units set by the current angular mode. (The current coordinate mode is ignored by these two functions.)



Before converting a set of coordinates, be sure the angular mode is set to the proper units for  $\theta$  (page 80).

### To convert rectangular to polar coordinates:

1. Key in the  $y$ -coordinate and press **[ENTER]**.
2. Key in the  $x$ -coordinate.
3. Press **[CONVERT]** **[→POL]**. The polar coordinates ( $r$  and  $\theta$ ) replace  $x$  and  $y$  in the X- and Y-registers.

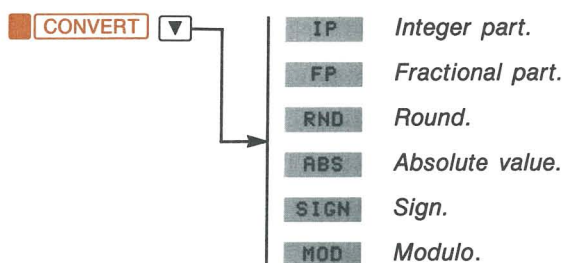
### To convert polar to rectangular coordinates:

1. Key in  $\theta$  and press **[ENTER]**.
2. Key in the radius,  $r$ .
3. Press **[CONVERT]** **[→REC]**. The rectangular coordinates ( $x$  and  $y$ ) replace  $r$  and  $\theta$  in the X- and Y-registers.

---

## Altering Parts of Numbers

The second row of the CONVERT menu contains the following functions:



**Integer Part (IP).** The IP function removes the fractional part of a real number. For example, the integer part of 14.2300 is 14.0000.

**Fractional Part (FP).** The FP function removes the integer part of a real number. For example, the fractional part of 14.2300 is 0.2300.

**Rounding Numbers (RND).** The RND function rounds a real number to the number of digits specified by the current display format. For example, to round a dollar value to the nearest penny, set the display format to FIX 2 and then execute RND ( **DISP** **FIX** 02 **CONVERT** **RND** ).

**Absolute Value (ABS).** The ABS function replaces the number in the X-register with its absolute value. If the X-register contains a complex number, ABS returns  $r$  (the radius).

**The Sign of a Number (SIGN).** The SIGN function tests a real number in the X-register and returns:

- 1 if  $x$  is a number greater than or equal to zero.
- $-1$  if  $x$  is a number less than zero.
- 0 if  $x$  is not a number.

If the X-register contains a complex number, SIGN returns the two-dimensional *unit vector* (which is also a complex number).

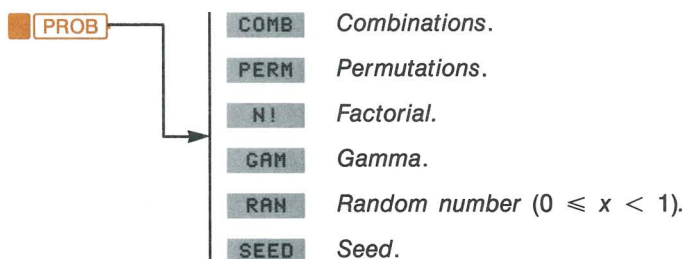


**Modulo (MOD).** The MOD function calculates the remainder of  $y \div x$  (where  $x$  and  $y$  are real numbers).

---

## Probability

The PROB (*probability*) menu contains the following functions:



## The Probability Functions

**Combinations.** The COMB (*combinations*) function calculates the number of possible *sets* of  $y$  different items taken in quantities of  $x$  items at a time. No item occurs more than once in a set, and different orders of the same  $x$  items are *not* counted separately. The formula is

$$C_{y,x} = \frac{y!}{x!(y-x)!}.$$




**Permutations.** The PERM (*permutations*) function calculates the number of possible different *arrangements* of  $y$  different items taken in quantities of  $x$  items at a time. No item occurs more than once in an arrangement, and different orders of the same  $x$  items *are* counted separately. The formula is

$$P_{y,x} = \frac{y!}{(y-x)!}.$$




**Factorials.** The N! (*factorial*) function calculates the factorial of the real number (integers only) in the X-register. For example, calculate 5!.

5   

$\gamma$ : 3.1500 $\times$ : 120.0000
--




**Gamma.** The GAMMA function calculates  $\Gamma(x)$ . Key in  $x$  and then press   .

## Generating a Random Number

**To generate a random number:** Press   . The RAN function returns a number in the range  $0 \leq x < 1$ .\*

The calculator uses a *seed* to generate random numbers. Each random number generated becomes the seed for the next random number. Therefore, a sequence of random numbers can be repeated by starting with the same seed.

### To store a new seed:

1. Key in any real number.
2. Press   .

Whenever Continuous Memory is reset, the seed is reset to zero. When the seed is equal to zero, the calculator generates a seed internally.

\* The random number generator in the HP-42S actually returns a number that is part of a uniformly distributed pseudorandom number sequence. This sequence passes the spectral test (D. Knuth, *Seminumerical Algorithms*, vol. 2, London: Addison Wesley, 1981).

---

# Hyperbolic Functions

To use a hyperbolic function, key in  $x$ , then execute the function.

To Calculate:	Execute:
Hyperbolic sine of $x$ .	SINH
Hyperbolic cosine of $x$ .	COSH
Hyperbolic tangent of $x$ .	TANH
Hyperbolic arc sine of $x$ .	ASINH
Hyperbolic arc cosine of $x$ .	ACOSH
Hyperbolic arc tangent of $x$ .	ATANH

## Complex Numbers

---

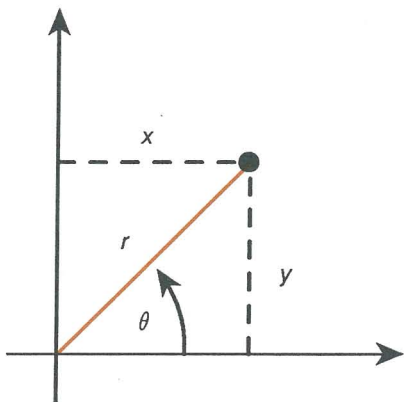
As mentioned in chapter 3, complex numbers are one of the four types of data used by the HP-42S. In this chapter you will learn:

- How to enter complex numbers.
  - How complex numbers are stored and displayed.
  - How to do arithmetic with complex numbers.
  - How to convert the storage registers to hold complex numbers.
- 

### Entering Complex Numbers

There are two common notations for writing a complex number  $z$ :

- *Rectangular form*:  $z = x + iy$ .
- *Polar form*:  $z = r \angle \theta$ .



The following relationships exist and define how the two forms are related.

$$\begin{aligned}x &= r \cos \theta \\y &= r \sin \theta \\r &= \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \\i &= \sqrt{-1}\end{aligned}$$

There are two parts to a complex number:  $x$  and  $y$ , or  $r$  and  $\theta$ . Each part may be any real number. The angle  $\theta$  is expressed using the current angular mode (Degrees, Radians, or Grads).

### To key in a complex number:

1. If necessary, set the correct coordinate and angular modes (using the MODES menu).
2. Key in the left-hand part ( $x$  or  $r$ ); press **ENTER**.
3. Key in the the right-hand part ( $y$  or  $\theta$ ).
4. Press **COMPLEX** to convert the two real numbers in the X- and Y-registers to a complex number in the X-register. Each part is displayed using the current display format.

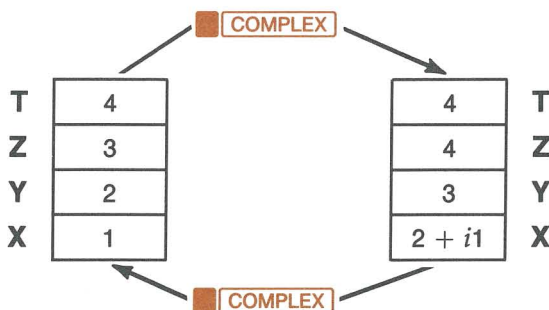
For example, to key in the complex number  $2 + i1$ , press 2 **ENTER** 1 **COMPLEX**.

The coordinate mode (Rectangular or Polar) determines how the calculator interprets and displays complex numbers (as  $x + iy$  or  $r \angle \theta$ ).

### How **COMPLEX** Works:

- If the X- and Y-registers contain real numbers, executing **COMPLEX** combines them to form a complex number.

- If the X-register contains a complex number, executing **COMPLEX** separates the number into two real numbers. The left-hand part goes into the Y-register and the right-hand part stays in the X-register.

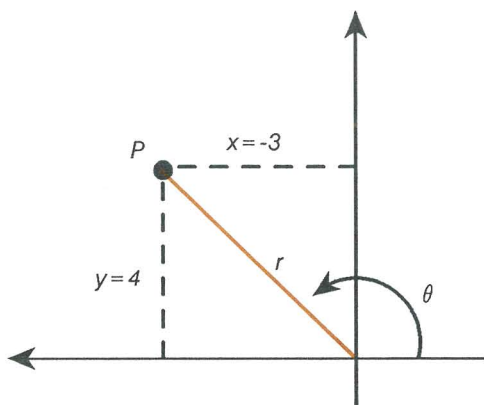


## How Complex Numbers Are Displayed

Internally, the calculator always stores complex numbers in rectangular form. This has the following effects when Polar mode is used:

- The angle  $\theta$  is always *normalized*. That is, the angle portion of a complex number is never larger than  $\pm 180^\circ$  ( $\pm \pi$  radians).
- If a complex number is keyed in with a negative radius, the radius is made positive. The angle  $\theta$  is increased by  $180^\circ$  ( $\pi$  radians) and then normalized.
- If a complex number is keyed in with a radius of zero, the angle portion of the number is also reduced to zero.

If either part of a complex number is too large or too small to display using the current display format, both parts are displayed using engineering notation (ENG 2). To view both parts of a complex number using full precision, press and hold **SHOW**.



The following four complex numbers are equivalent representations of the point  $P$  shown above.

Coordinate Mode:	Angular Mode:	Display:
Rectangular	Any	$-3.0000 + i4.0000$
Polar	Degrees	$5.0000 \angle 126.8699$
Polar	Radians	$5.0000 \angle 2.2143$
Polar	Grads	$5.0000 \angle 140.9666$

## Arithmetic With Complex Numbers

Most of the arithmetic functions in the previous chapter work with complex numbers as well as real numbers. For example, calculate the following expression:

$$(5 + i3) + (7 - i9).$$

Ensure the calculator is in Rectangular mode.

**MODES** **RECT**

Y: 0.0000  
X: 0.0000



Enter the two numbers.

5 **ENTER** 3 **COMPLEX**  
7 **ENTER** 9 **+/-** **COMPLEX**

Y: 5.0000 i3.0000  
X: 7.0000 -i9.0000

And add them.

**+**

Y: 0.0000  
X: 12.0000 -i6.0000

**Complex Results Produced by Real-Number Functions.** Some real-number functions can produce a complex number as a result. For example, calculating the square root of a negative number produces the appropriate complex number.

Multiply the result from the calculation above by  $\sqrt{-25}$ .\*

25 **+/-**  **$\sqrt{x}$**

Y: 12.0000 -i6.0000  
X: 0.0000 i5.0000

**x**

Y: 0.0000  
X: 30.0000 i60.0000

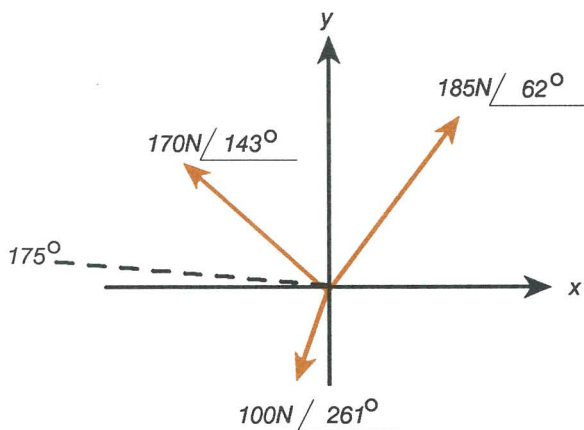
---

## Vector Operations Using Complex Numbers

A complex number can represent a vector in a two-dimensional plane. Using the vector functions in the second row of the MATRIX menu (page 220), you can perform vector operations with complex numbers.

**Example: Dot Product of Complex Numbers.** The figure below represents three two-dimensional force vectors. Use complex numbers and add the three vectors. Then use the DOT (*dot product*) function to find the component of the resulting vector along the  $175^\circ$  line.

\* The calculator's ability to produce complex results with real-number functions can be disabled by pressing **MODES** **▼** **RRES** (*real results only*). To enable complex results (after they have been disabled with **RRES**), press **MODES** **▼** **CRS** (*complex-result enable*).



Select Degrees and Polar modes.

MODES DEG MODES POLAR

Y: 0.0000
X: 67.0820 ∠63.4349

Add the three vectors.

185 ENTER 62 COMPLEX

Y: 67.0820 ∠63.4349
X: 185.0000 ∠62.0000

170 ENTER 143 COMPLEX

Y: 185.0000 ∠62.0000
X: 170.0000 ∠143.0000

+

Y: 67.0820 ∠63.4349
X: 270.1198 ∠100.4332

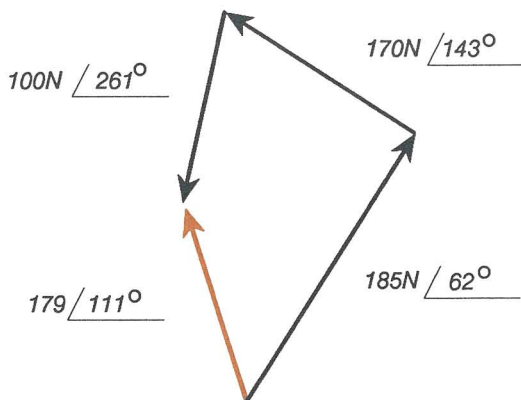
100 ENTER 261 COMPLEX

Y: 270.1198 ∠100.4332
X: 100.0000 ∠-99.0000

+

Y: 67.0820 ∠63.4349
X: 178.9372 ∠111.1489

Thus, the resulting sum is a force of approximately 179 Newtons at  $111^\circ$ .



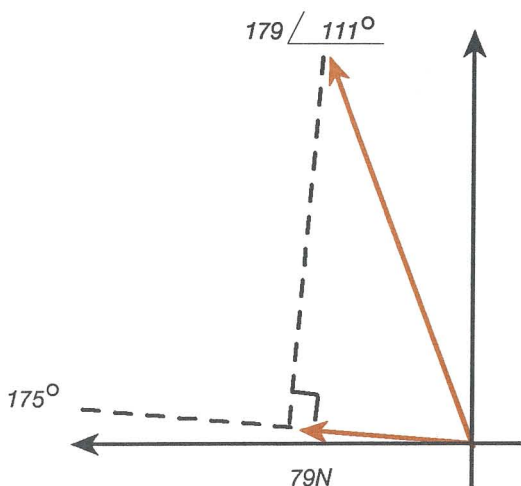
Now calculate the 175° component of this result.

1  175

y: 178.9372 ∠111.1489  
x: 1.0000 ∠175.0000

x: 78.8586  
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITM

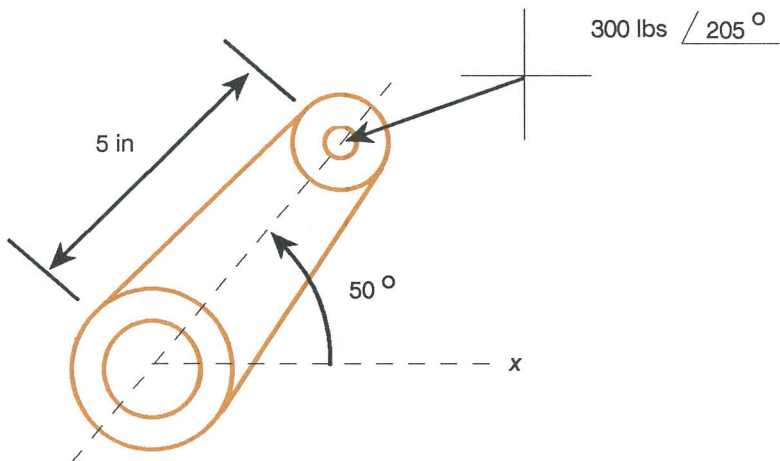
Thus, the resulting sum has a component of approximately 79 Newtons in the direction of 175°.



**Example: Computing Moments.** To compute the moment of two vectors, use the CROSS (*cross product*) function. The cross product of two vectors is a third orthogonal vector. However, when two complex numbers are crossed, the HP-42S simply returns a real number that is equal to the signed magnitude of the resulting moment vector.

Find the moment generated by the force acting through the lever in the illustration below, where

$$\vec{M} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}.$$



Select Degrees and Polar modes. (You can skip this step if you have already selected these modes.)

MODES

DEG

MODES

POLAR

y: 67.0820

z: 263.4349

x: 78.8586

Key in the radius vector and the force vector.

5

ENTER

50

COMPLEX

y: 78.8586

z: 5.0000

x: 250.0000

300

ENTER

205

COMPLEX

y: 5.0000

z: 300.0000

x: -155.0000

Calculate the cross product.

 **MATRIX**  **CROSS**

x: 633.9274				
DOT	CROSS	UVEC	DIM	INDEX EDITN



The moment vector has a magnitude of 634 and, since the result is positive, the vector points up, perpendicular to the plane of this page.\*

**EXIT**

---

## Storing Complex Numbers

### Complex-Number Variables

When you store a complex number into a variable, the variable name is added to the complex-variable catalog. To display a catalog menu containing all of the complex-number variables, press  **CATALOG**  **CPX**. To recall a variable from the catalog, press the corresponding menu key. Refer to chapter 3 for details on using variables and catalogs.

### Making the Storage Registers Complex

Normally, each storage register can hold only a real number or an Alpha string. However, you can change the type of the *REGS* matrix to complex so that each storage register holds a complex number.

\* If the problem you're working requires a true (three dimensional) vector as a result, use a  $1 \times 3$  matrix to represent each vector in three dimensions.

### To make the storage registers complex:

1. Enter zero as a complex number: 0 **[ENTER]** **[COMPLEX]**.
2. Press **[STO]** **[+]** **[REGS]** to add the complex number (zero) to the *REGS* matrix.

Since the result of any arithmetic is complex if either operand is complex, this procedure makes the storage registers complex. The procedure will fail if any of the storage registers contain an Alpha string.


### To make the storage registers real:

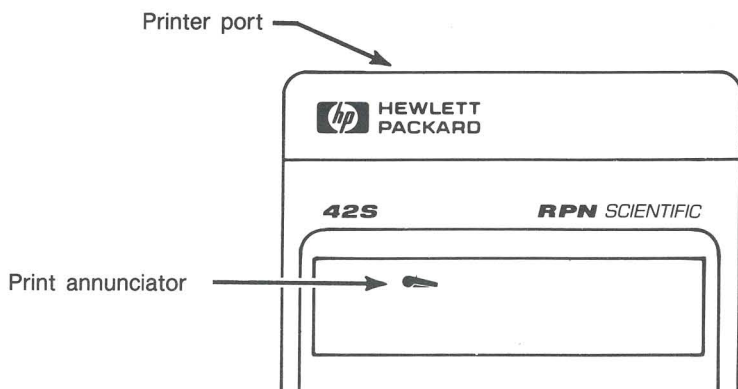
1. Press **[RCL]** **[REGS]** to recall a copy of the storage registers into the X-register.
2. Press **[COMPLEX]** to separate the complex matrix into two real matrices.
3. Press **[xzy]** to move the matrix of real-parts into the X-register.
4. Press **[STO]** **[REGS]**.

## Printing

---

The HP-42S prints information using the HP 82240A Infrared Printer, which accepts the infrared signal generated by the calculator's printer port.

The print annunciator (  ) comes on whenever the calculator sends information through its printer port.



With a printer you can:

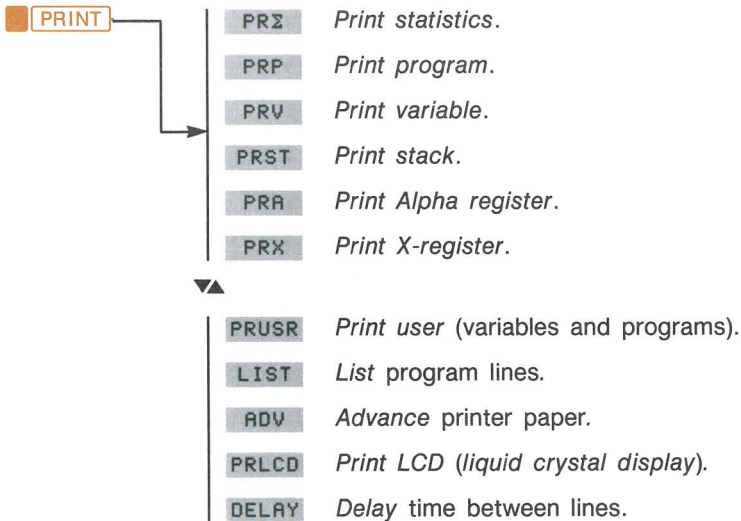
- Print intermediate and final results, including all types of data.
- Keep a running record of your keystrokes and calculations.
- List the names of programs and variables stored in the calculator.
- Print complete and partial program listings.
- Print a copy of the display.



---

## Common Printing Operations

The first two rows of the PRINT menu contains these print functions:



Here are a few common printing tasks:





**To enable printing:** Press **PRINT** **PON** (*printing on*). The PRON function sets flags 21 (printer enable) and 55 (printer existence).

The infrared printer port remains enabled until you disable it by pressing **PRINT** **POFF** (*printing off*). The PROFF function clears flags 21 and 55.

**To print the contents of the X-register:** Press **PRINT** **PRX** .

**To print the contents of a variable:**

1. Press **PRINT** **PRV** .
2. Select the variable from the catalog, or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu.

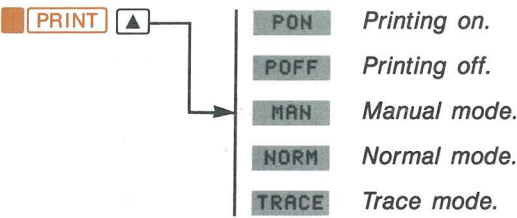
For example, to print the contents of the storage registers (which are stored as a matrix named *REGS*), press    .

**To print the contents of the Alpha register:** Press   .







---

# Printing Modes

*How and when* information is sent to the printer depends on the current modes. The functions for controlling the printing modes are in the third row of the PRINT menu:







## To select a printing mode:

1. Press   .
2. Press one of the following:
  -  (*Manual mode*). Use this mode when you want the calculator to print only when a print function is executed. The VIEW and AVIEW functions can also generate printer output in this mode. (This is the default mode.)
  -  (*Normal mode*). Use this mode when you want to print a record of prompts and keystrokes.
  -  (*Trace mode*). Use this mode when you want to print a record of prompts, keystrokes, and results. If a program is running, each instruction is printed as it executes. This mode is primarily intended for testing and debugging programs.

---

# Flags That Affect Printing

There are several flags that affect how and when information is printed. For example, to cause all printing to be double-wide, set flag 12 (  **FLAGS**  **SF** 12). To return to normal-width printing, clear flag 12 (  **FLAGS**  **CF** 12).



Flag(s)	Purpose	Page(s)
12	Double-wide printing.	274
13	Lowercase printing.	274
15 and 16	Printing mode.	274
21 and 55	Printer enable and printer existence.	131 and 132

---

# Printing Speed and Delay Time

Since the HP-42S is capable of sending information faster than it can be printed by the HP 82240A Infrared Printer, the calculator uses a *delay* time to avoid losing information. To optimize printing speed, set the delay time slightly greater than the time it takes for your printer to print a single line of information.


## To set the printing delay time:

1. Key the delay time into the X-register (in seconds). The longest delay time you can set is 1.9 seconds.
2. Press  **PRINT**  **DELAY** .

If you're operating the printer without an AC adapter, printing speed will slow down as the batteries discharge. If you are using the longest delay time (1.9 seconds) and your printer is still too slow, replace the batteries or connect an AC adapter. Operating the printer with batteries this low (without an AC adapter) will likely result in poor infrared communication and may damage the printer.

---

## Low Calculator Batteries

To conserve battery power, the HP-42S will not transmit data to the printer when the  annunciator is on. If low battery power occurs after you've started printing, printing stops and the calculator displays **Batt Too Low To Print**. The calculator automatically returns to Manual mode.

---



## Calculator Functions That Print

If printing is enabled (after executing PRON), the VIEW and AVIEW functions automatically generate printed output (in addition to performing their normal functions).

For more information on how these functions and flags 21 and 55 affect program execution, refer to chapter 9, "Program Input and Output."

---

## Printing Graphics in the Display



The PRLCD ( ) function copies the display to the printer, pixel for pixel. The primary purpose for this function is to print graphics that you create in the display using the PIXEL and AGRAPH functions (page 135).

The "PLOT" program on page 160 creates a plot in the display and then uses the PRLCD function to print it.

---

## Printing Programs





**To print an entire program:**

1. Press   (*print program*).
2. Select the program from the catalog, or type the program name (global label) using the ALPHA menu.

The PRP function prints the entire program, even if the global label you specify is not the first line of the program.

If you do not specify any label (  **PRINT**  **PRP**  **ENTER**  **ENTER** ), the calculator prints the current program.

### To print part of a program:

1. Position the program pointer to the line where you want to start the listing (page 111).
2. Press  **PRINT**   **LIST** .
3. Key in the number of lines you want to print, *nnnn*. (If you enter fewer than four digits, complete the instruction by pressing  **ENTER** .)

The program listing begins with the current line and continues for *nnnn* lines or until an END instruction is encountered.

---

## Character Sets

Some characters are not printed as you see them in the display. This is because the character set used in the HP-42S does not directly match the character set used in the HP 82240A Infrared Printer. Compare the character table in appendix E of this manual with the character set listed in the HP 82240A owner's manual.



# Part 2

## Programming

---

<b>Page</b>	<b>108</b>	<b>8: Simple Programming</b>
	<b>121</b>	<b>9: Program Input and Output</b>
	<b>141</b>	<b>10: Programming Techniques</b>
	<b>166</b>	<b>11: Using HP-41 Programs</b>



## Simple Programming

---

Part 1 of this manual introduced you to several functions and operations that you can use *manually* (from the keyboard). In this chapter you will learn how *programs* can be used to store and execute a sequence of functions. More specifically, you will learn:

- How to key a program into memory.
- How to edit (change) a program.
- How to execute (run) a program.
- What happens when an error causes a program to stop.
- About the parts of a program.
- How to clear a program from memory.

The programming information in this manual (chapters 8, 9, and 10) should give you a good start at writing your own programs. If you're interested in more advanced programming information and techniques, refer to the *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020).

---

## An Introduction to Keystroke Programming

The sequence of steps a program uses to perform a calculation are the same as the steps you would execute when solving the problem manually. By programming your calculator you can repeat operations or calculations without repeating the keystrokes every time.




For example, consider the formula for the area of a circle:

$$A = \pi r^2.$$

To calculate the area of a circle with a radius of 5, you would key in the radius, square it, and then multiply by  $\pi$ .

5   

Y: 0.0000
X: 78.5398

The keystrokes    can be stored as a program and then executed any number of times for circles of different radii. Such a program might look like this:

```
01 LBL "AREA"
02 X^2
03 PI
04 ×
05 END
```

This program assumes that the radius is in the X-register when the program runs. To calculate an area, you would key in a radius and then run the program. The result (the area of the circle) is left in the X-register when the program ends.




The label (line 01) identifies the program so you can refer to it by name. The END instruction (line 05) separates this program from the next program in memory.

**Example: Keying In and Running a Program.** To key a program into the calculator, press    to move to a *new program space* (page 118), and then press  to select *Program-entry mode*.

00 ( 0-Byte Prgm )
01 .END.

Key in the program listed above.

  AREA 

00 ( 8-Byte Prgm )
01 LBL "AREA"

The next three lines are the *body* of the program—that is, the part that calculates the area of the circle. As you press the keys, the calculator records them and automatically numbers them as program steps.

$x^2$

```
01 LBL "AREA"  
02  $\rightarrow$ X $\uparrow$ 2
```

$\pi$

```
02 X $\uparrow$ 2  
03  $\rightarrow$ PI
```

$\times$

```
03 PI  
04  $\rightarrow$ x
```

The calculator has automatically provided an END statement for you, so the program is complete. If you want to review the program before exiting Program-entry mode, use  $\blacktriangledown$  and  $\blacktriangle$  to move up and down through the lines of the program.

EXIT

```
Y: 0.0000  
X: 78.5398
```

Now you can use the program to calculate the area of any circle given the radius,  $r$ . Key in a radius of 5 and run the program.

5 XEQ AREA

```
Y: 78.5398  
X: 78.5398
```

The result is the same as when you solved the problem manually. Find the area of a circle with a radius of 2.5.

2.5 XEQ AREA

```
Y: 78.5398  
X: 19.6350
```

Divide the two results.


$\div$

```
Y: 78.5398  
X: 4.0000
```


The area of a circle with a radius of 5 is 4 times greater than the area of a circle with a radius of 2.5.

---

## Program-Entry Mode

The  **PRGM** key toggles the calculator in and out of Program-entry mode. In Program-entry mode, functions and numbers you key in are saved as program instructions.

### The Program Pointer

While working the example above, you may have noticed the ► character in the display. This is the *program pointer*. It points to the *current program line*. If the current program line is too long for the display, press and hold the  **SHOW** key to display the entire line.

### Moving the Program Pointer

The following instructions are nonprogrammable, so you can execute them in or out of Program-entry mode to move the program pointer.


**To move the program pointer to:**

**Press:**

The next program line.

 **SST** (or  if no menu is displayed)

The previous program line.

 **BST** (or  if no menu is displayed)

Line number *nnnn* of the current program.

 **GTO**  *nnnn*

A global label.

 **GTO**  **ENTER** *label* **ENTER**


A new program space.

 **GTO**  

### Inserting Program Lines

Instructions keyed into a program are inserted immediately *after* the current program line and the pointer advances to the new line. Therefore, to insert a program line between lines 04 and 05 of a program, you would move the pointer to line 04 and then key in the instruction.

## Deleting Program Lines





To delete a program line, position the program pointer to the line you want to delete, and then press . When you delete a line, the program pointer moves to the previous line.

To delete several consecutive program lines, use the DEL (*delete*) function (page 120).

---

## Executing Programs

In general, there are two ways to run programs:

- *Normal execution.* Program instructions continue to execute until an instruction that stops program execution is encountered (such as STOP, PROMPT, RTN, or END) or until you manually stop the program by pressing  or .
- *Stepwise execution.* Program instructions are executed one at a time as you *step* through the program with the   key. This method of executing a program is especially useful when you are *debugging* a program (testing for errors).

Remember, Program-entry mode must be *off* to run a program.

### Normal Execution

**To execute a program using the program catalog:**

1. Press  or  .
2. Press the menu key corresponding to the program you want to execute.

This method is used in the example on page 110.

**To assign a program to the CUSTOM menu:**

1. Press   .
2. Press the menu key corresponding to the program you want to assign.

- The CUSTOM menu has three rows; use  $\nabla$  or  $\blacktriangle$  to display the row you want and then press the menu key where you want the program assigned.

For example, assign the "AREA" program to the CUSTOM menu.

**ASSIGN** **PGM** **AREA**

ASSIGN "AREA" TO \_

$\sqrt{x}$  (the third menu key)

x: 4.0000  
AREA

Now, each time you want to calculate the area of a circle, key in the radius and then press **AREA**.

5 **AREA**

x: 78.5398  
AREA

3.25 **AREA**

x: 33.1831  
AREA

**EXIT**

## Running a Program With **R/S**

To run the current program beginning with the current program line, press **R/S** (run/stop). If you hold the **R/S** key down, the calculator displays the current program line ( $\blacktriangledown$ ); that is, the line to be executed next. If you hold **R/S** down until NULL appears, the program does not begin running when you release the key.

You can position the program pointer to the top of the current program by executing the RTN function when Program-entry mode is off. Therefore, to run the current program (beginning with the first line), press **PGM.FCN** **RTN** and then **R/S**.



## Stopping a Program

To stop a running program press **R/S** or **EXIT**. Execution halts after the current instruction is completed. To resume execution, press **R/S** again.

---

## Testing and Debugging a Program

The HP-42S allows you to execute any program one step at a time with the **SST** key. This feature is particularly useful when you are trying to find a *bug* (error) in a program or when you just want to see how each instruction in a program works. (Note that if there is no menu displayed, the **▼** and **▲** keys can be used to execute the **SST** and **BST** functions.)

While testing or debugging a program, you may want to use Trace mode to print a running record of each program step as it is executed. To select Trace mode, press **PRINT** **▲** **TRACE**.

### To execute a program one step at a time:

1. Position the program pointer to the label or line number where you want to start executing the program. If you skip this step, execution will begin with the current program line.
2. Be sure Program-entry mode is *off*. If any data is needed at the start of the program, enter it.
3. Press and hold **SST** to display the current program line. When you release **SST**, the instruction is immediately executed and the program pointer advances.

If you hold the **SST** key down too long, **NULL** appears and the program instruction is *not* executed when you release the key.

When the program pointer reaches the end of the current program, it *wraps* around to the first line.

You can move the program pointer up (backwards) through a program with the **BST** key. The **BST** key:

- Moves the program pointer *without* executing program instructions.




- Repeats when you hold the key down.

---

## Error Stops

If an error occurs while a program is running, program execution halts, and the appropriate error message is displayed. The error message disappears when you press a key.

The program pointer stops at the line that generated the error. To view the line, select Program-entry mode ( PRGM).

A running program will ignore an error if flag 24 (*range ignore*) or flag 25 (*error ignore*) is set. Refer to appendix C for more information on these flags.



---

## The Basic Parts of a Program

### Program Lines and Program Memory

As you've already seen, when the HP-42S is in Program-entry mode, keystrokes you enter are not immediately executed, but are stored in program memory as instructions. Each instruction occupies a single program line, which is automatically numbered.

**Types of Program Lines.** Program lines are divided into several categories. A program line may contain:

- A program label (such as LBL "AREA").
- A complete instruction (such as a simple numeric function, like , or an instruction that includes a parameter, like  14).
- A complete number (called a *numeric constant*).
- An Alpha string of up to 15 characters (called an *Alpha constant*).

**Memory Requirements.** Program steps may vary in size from 1 to 16 bytes. At the top of each program (line 00) the calculator displays the size of the current program in bytes.

If you run out of memory while trying to enter a program line, the calculator displays **Insufficient Memory**. Refer to appendix B, “Managing Calculator Memory.”

## Program Labels



A label is an identifier placed at the beginning of a series of program steps. Program labels may be used anywhere in a program. Generally, a program starts with a *global label*. Within a program, individual routines can be identified with *local labels*.

**Global Labels.** Global labels use Alpha characters and are distinguished by quotation marks around the label name.\* For example, the program at the beginning of this chapter has a global label:

```
01 LBL "AREA"
```





Global labels may be one to seven characters long. The single-letter names **A** through **J** and **a** through **e** are reserved for local Alpha labels (which are displayed *without* quotation marks).

Global labels:

- Can be accessed no matter where the program pointer is located.
- Are listed in the program catalog (  **CATALOG**  ).
- Can be assigned to the CUSTOM menu.
- Should be unique within calculator memory to avoid confusing one program with another.

**Local Labels.** There are two types of local labels: *numeric* and *Alpha*.

- Numeric labels are identified by two digits, **LBL 00** through **LBL 99**. (**LBL 00** through **LBL 14** are called *short form* local labels because they use less memory.)
- Local Alpha labels use single Alpha characters, **LBL A** through **LBL J** and **LBL a** through **LBL e**.

\* To key in a global label that begins with a digit character, select an ALPHA submenu and then type the digit. This forces the digit to become an Alpha character. For example, to key in **LBL "1"**, press  **PGM.FCN**  **LBL**  **ABCOE** **1**  **ENTER**. Without **ABCOE**, the label is interpreted as **LBL 01**.

Local labels are used to mark and provide access to various segments of a program. The primary purpose for local labels is to facilitate program *branching*. Refer to “Branching” in chapter 10.

Local labels can be:

- Accessed only within the current program.
- Duplicated in separate programs. That is, local labels do not need to be unique within calculator memory, but they should be unique within each program. (It is possible to use duplicate local labels within a single program if you consider the search patterns used to find local labels. Refer to page 148.)

## The Body of a Program


The body of a program is where all the work is done. For example, the body of the “AREA” program is:

```
02 X↑2
03 PI
04 ×
```

This program contains two functions ( $X\uparrow 2$  and  $\times$ ) and a numeric constant (PI).

## Constants

**Numeric Constants.** A numeric constant is simply a number in a program. When the line is executed the number is placed in the X-register, lifting the stack just as if you keyed the number in from the keyboard.

The PI function () operates like a numeric constant. Thus, the “AREA” program would return exactly the same result if line 03 looked like this:\*

```
03 3.14159265359
```

\* Although the program would run the same, keying in the 12-digit approximation for  $\pi$  takes 14 bytes of program memory; the PI function requires only 1 byte.

**Consecutive Numeric Constants.** Because numeric constants in programs are on different program lines, **ENTER** is not needed to separate them. Consider these two programs:

01 12	01 12
02 ENTER	02 17
03 17	03 x
04 x	

Both programs produce the same result ( $12 \times 17$ ), however the one on the right is one line shorter and saves one byte of program memory. To key in the program lines on the right, press 12 **ENTER** **◀** 17 **x**.

## Program ENDS

Programs are separated from one another with END instructions. The last program in memory uses the *permanent* END, which appears in the display as .END..

After the first program in memory, you should insert an END between subsequent programs so they will be considered as separate programs, and not just labeled routines within the same program. There are two ways to enter an END at the end of a program:

- Press **◻GTO◻◻◻**. This procedure automatically inserts an END after the last program in memory and positions the program pointer to the new program space at the bottom of program memory. This space contains the *null* program:

```
00 { 0-Byte Prgm }
01 .END.
```

- Or, manually execute the END function (press **XEQ** **ENTER** **END** **ENTER**) or use the function catalog).







Because END instructions separate programs, deleting an END causes the two programs to be joined as one program. You cannot delete the permanent .END..

LBL "PAM" . . . END
LBL "BRUCE" . . . . END
LBL "CHRIS" . . . END
LBL "BOB" . . . END
LBL "DEX" . . .END.





---









## Clearing Programs

**To clear an entire program from memory:**

1. Press  .
2. Specify the program you want to clear using *one* of the following:
  - Press the menu key corresponding to a global label in the program.
  - Use the ALPHA menu to type a global label ( *label* .
  - Or, press   to clear the *current* program.

## To clear a portion of a program:

1. Press  **PRGM** to select Program-entry mode (if the calculator is not already in Program-entry mode).
2. Position the program pointer to the first line in the range of lines you want to delete.
3. Press  **CLEAR**   **DEL** (*delete*).
4. Key in the number of lines you want to delete.

For example, to delete lines 14 through 22 of the current program, you would press:  **PRGM** (to select Program-entry mode),  **GTO**  **14**  **ENTER** (to position the program pointer to line 14),  **CLEAR**   **DEL** **9**  **ENTER** (to delete 9 program lines).

The DEL function deletes program lines only if the calculator is in Program-entry mode.

## Program Input and Output

---

An *interactive* program has two general characteristics:

- *Input.* The program prompts you to key in information or make a selection.
- *Output.* The program presents results in a meaningful format using the display or a printer.

This chapter covers functions and techniques for making programs easier to use. You'll learn about:

- Prompting for values and using variable menus.
- Displaying labeled output and messages.
- Printing during program execution.
- Working with Alpha data.
- Displaying graphics.

---

### Using the INPUT Function

Using the INPUT function is one of the simplest ways for a program to prompt for data to be stored into a variable or register. When an INPUT instruction is executed:

- The current value of the variable or register is recalled into the X-register. If you use a new variable name, the INPUT function automatically creates the variable and assigns an initial value of zero.
- The normal label for the X-register (X: ) is replaced with the name of the variable or register being input and a question mark.



- Program execution halts, allowing you to key in or calculate a value.

When you press  $\boxed{R/S}$ , the value in the X-register is automatically stored into the variable or register and program execution continues.

Pressing  $\boxed{EXIT}$  (if there is no menu displayed) cancels the INPUT function without storing any data. If you then press  $\boxed{R/S}$ , the INPUT is resumed with the original value.

**Example: Using INPUT.** The formula for the surface area of a box is

$$Area = 2 ((length \times height) + (length \times width) + (height \times width)).$$

The following program uses INPUT to prompt for the values of  $L$ ,  $H$ , and  $W$  and then calculates the surface area.

01 LBL "SAREA"	Inputs each of the three
02 INPUT "L"	variables.
03 INPUT "H"	
04 INPUT "W"	
05 RCL× "L"	Calculates $length \times width$ . The value of $W$ is already in the X-register because it was the last value input.
06 LASTX	
07 RCL× "H"	Calculates $height \times width$
08 RCL "H"	
09 RCL× "L"	Calculates $length \times height$
10 +	
11 +	Calculates sum of the products,
12 2	multiplies by 2, and leaves the
13 ×	result in the X-register.
14 END	

Key the program into your calculator.

**GTO** **.** **.** **PRGM**

**PGM.FCN** **PGM.FCN** **LBL**

SAREA **ENTER**

**INPUT** **ENTER** L **ENTER**

**INPUT** **ENTER** H **ENTER**

**INPUT** **ENTER** W **ENTER** **EXIT**

**RCL** **x** **ENTER** L **ENTER**

**LASTx**

**RCL** **x** **ENTER** H **ENTER**

**RCL** **ENTER** H **ENTER**

**RCL** **x** **ENTER** L **ENTER**

**+**

**+**

2 **x**

**EXIT**

00< 0-Byte Prgm >  
01 .END.

01▶LBL "SAREA"  
LBL RTN INPUT VIEW RVIEW SEQ

02▶INPUT "L"  
LBL RTN INPUT VIEW RVIEW SEQ

03▶INPUT "H"  
LBL RTN INPUT VIEW RVIEW SEQ

03 INPUT "H"  
04▶INPUT "W"

04 INPUT "W"  
05▶RCLx "L"

05 RCLx "L"  
06▶LASTX

06 LASTX  
07▶RCLx "H"

07 RCLx "H"  
08▶RCL "H"

08 RCL "H"  
09▶RCLx "L"

09 RCLx "L"  
10▶+

10 +  
11▶+

12 2  
13▶x

Run the program to calculate the surface area of a box that is  $4 \times 3 \times 1.5$  meters.

**XEQ** **SAREA**

Y: 0.0000  
L?0.0000

The program is prompting for a value of *L*. Key in the length (4) and press **R/S**.

4 **R/S**

Y: 4.0000  
H?0.0000

Key in the height (3) and press **R/S**.

3 **R/S**

Y: 3.0000  
W?0.0000

Key in the width (1.5) and press **R/S**.

1.5 **R/S**

Y: 0.0000  
X: 45.0000

The surface area is 45 square meters.

What is the surface area of a box that is twice as long? Run the program again. This time multiply the length by 2 and leave the other values as they are.

**XEQ** **SAREA**

Y: 45.0000  
L?4.0000

2 **x** **R/S**

Y: 8.0000  
H?3.0000

**R/S**

Y: 3.0000  
W?1.5000

**R/S**

Y: 3.0000  
X: 81.0000

The surface area is 81 square meters.

---

## Using a Variable Menu

Using a *variable menu* may be the most efficient way for a program to input values for several variables. The VARMENU (*variable menu*) function creates a menu containing variable names. When the program stops, the menu is displayed allowing you to store, recall, and view variables.

The VARMENU function requires a global program label as a parameter. When a program executes VARMENU, the calculator searches for the specified program label. It then builds the variable menu using the MVAR (*menu variable*) instructions immediately following the specified label. (The calculator ignores MVAR instructions except when they are being read by the VARMENU function.\*)

### To store a value into a menu variable:

1. Key in or calculate the value.
2. Press the corresponding menu key.

### To recall the value of a menu variable:

1. Press RCL.
2. Press the corresponding menu key.

### To view a menu variable without recalling it:

1. Press   (shift).
2. Press *and hold* the corresponding menu key. The message disappears when you release the key.

\* The Solver and Integration applications also use variable menus defined with MVAR instructions.

## To continue program execution:

- Press a menu key.
- Or, press **[R/S]**.

If you continue by pressing a menu key, the name of the corresponding variable is stored into the Alpha register. Your program can use this information to determine which key was pressed. If you continue by pressing **[R/S]**, the Alpha register is not altered.

## To exit from a variable menu:

- Press **[EXIT]**.
- Or, select an application menu (**[SOLVER]**, **[f f(x)]**, **[MATRIX]**, **[STAT]**, or **[BASE]**).

**Example: Using a Variable Menu.** In the previous program, the INPUT function was used to prompt for three variables. By replacing lines 02, 03, and 04 with the following seven program lines, you can add a variable menu to the program.

02 MVAR "L"	Declares the menu variables following the global label.
03 MVAR "H"	
04 MVAR "W"	
05 VARMENU "SAREA"	Creates the variable menu and stops the program. When the program is restarted, the variable menu is exited.
06 STOP	
07 EXITALL	
08 RCL "W"	Since the variables in a variable menu can be entered in any order, there is no guarantee that W will be in the X-register (as there was in the first program).

Edit the "SAREA" program. First delete lines 02, 03, and 04.

**[PRGM]** **[GTO]** **[.]** 4 **[ENTER]**

**[◀]** **[◀]** **[◀]**

```
03 INPUT "H"  
04▶INPUT "W"
```

```
01▶LBL "SAREA"  
02 RCLx "L"
```

Now insert the new program lines.

PGM.FCN

PGM.FCN

▲

MVAR

L

MVAR

H

MVAR

W

VARM

SAREA

EXIT

R/S

CATALOG

FCN

02▶MVAR "L"

MVAR VARM GETK MENU KEYG KEYH

03▶MVAR "H"

MVAR VARM GETK MENU KEYG KEYH

04▶MVAR "W"

MVAR VARM GETK MENU KEYG KEYH

05▶VARMENU "SAREA"

MVAR VARM GETK MENU KEYG KEYH

05 VARMENU "SAREA"

06▶STOP

06▶STOP

ABS ACOS ACOSH ADV AGRA AIP

Use the arrow keys to find the EXITALL function in the catalog.

▼

...

▼

EXITA

RCL

W

EXIT

06 STOP

07▶EXITALL

07 EXITALL

08▶RCL "W"

Now run the new version of the program.

XEQ

SAREA

x: 81.0000

L H W

The variable menu is displayed, ready to use. Calculate the surface area of a box that is  $5.5 \times 2 \times 3.75$  cm.

5.5

L

L=5.5000

L H W

2 W

W=2.0000					
L	H	W			

3.75 H

H=3.7500					
L	H	W			

R/S

Y: 3.7500					
X: 78.2500					

The surface area is 78.25 cm<sup>2</sup>.

## Displaying Labeled Results (VIEW)

To display the contents of a variable or register use the VIEW function. VIEW creates a message that includes the variable or register name, an equal sign, and the data stored there. (Also refer to “Printing With VIEW and AVIEW” on page 132.)

For example, add these two lines to the end of the “SAREA” program.

18 STO "SAREA"  
19 VIEW "SAREA"

Line 18 stores the result into a variable named SAREA. Line 19 displays the contents of SAREA.

0 [STO] [ENTER] SAREA [ENTER]

Y: 78.2500
X: 0.0000

[PRGM] [GTO] . 17 [ENTER]

16 2
17 ▶ X

[STO] SAREA

17 X
18 ▶ STO "SAREA"

[PGM.FCN] VIEW SAREA

18 STO "SAREA"
19 ▶ VIEW "SAREA"



EXIT

Y: 78.2500  
X: 0.0000

Now, run the program again using dimensions of  $2 \times 3 \times 4$  m.

XEQ SAREA

X: 0.0000

2 L 3 W 4 H R/S


SAREA=52.0000  
X: 52.0000

This time the answer is labeled for you. This technique is particularly useful when a program has several results.

## Displaying Messages (AVIEW and PROMPT)

Messages are useful in programs to display descriptive prompts, output, and error conditions. For a program to display a message, it must:

1. Create the message in the Alpha register with an Alpha string.
2. Display the contents of the Alpha register.

To create a two line display, insert the *line feed* character ( **PUNC**  ) into the Alpha register as part of your message. When you execute AVIEW or PROMPT, characters following the line feed character are displayed on the second line of the display.

You can use more than one line feed character to produce multiline messages on the printer. However, since the calculator has a two-line display, anything following the second line feed character (within the same message) cannot be displayed.

**The AVIEW Function.** The AVIEW function displays the contents of the Alpha register. Depending on the status of flags 21 and 55, AVIEW may halt program execution or produce printer output. Refer to "Printing With VIEW and AVIEW" on page 132.

**The PROMPT Function.** The PROMPT function displays the contents of the Alpha register just as AVIEW does. However, PROMPT always halts program execution and only generates printer output in Normal and Trace printing modes.

---

## Entering Alpha Strings Into Programs

An Alpha string entered as a program line—called an *Alpha constant*—is placed into the Alpha register when that line is executed. For a normal Alpha constant, like the one that follows, the Alpha string *replaces* the previous contents of the Alpha register.

```
01 "This is an"
```

If the *append symbol* precedes an Alpha string, the calculator appends the string to the current contents of the Alpha register.\*

```
02 +- " Alpha String"
```

Append symbol





After executing these two program lines, the Alpha register contains:

```
This is an Alpha String
```

The “SMILE” program on page 139 uses program lines like this to create a special string in the Alpha register.

### To key an Alpha string into a program:

1. Press  **ALPHA** to display the ALPHA menu.
2. Optional: press **ENTER** to insert the append symbol (+-).
3. Type the string.
4. Press **ENTER** or  **ALPHA** to complete the string.

An Alpha string in a program may be up to 15 characters long. (The append symbol counts as a character.)

If the Alpha register fills up (44 characters), appending more characters pushes the left-most (oldest) characters out of the Alpha register.

\* Note that some printers may not be able to print the append character.

This program displays three consecutive messages:

```
01 "Hello there,"
02 AVIEW
03 PSE
04 "this program"
05 AVIEW
06 PSE
07 "has 3 messages."
08 AVIEW
09 END
```

Without the PSE instructions (lines 03 and 06) the program would run too fast to see the first two messages. A PSE is not needed after the last AVIEW because the viewed information remains in the display after the program stops. Pressing a key during a PSE causes program execution to halt. Press **R/S** to resume program execution.

## Printing During Program Execution

Printing is another important form of program output. For a complete description of print functions and modes, read chapter 7, "Printing."

### Using Print Functions in Programs

When a print function (such as PRX, PRA, or PRV) is encountered in a running program, the calculator tests flags 21 and 55. In general, flag 21 (*printer enabled*) determines if printing is *desired* and flag 55 (*printer existence*) determines if printing is *possible*.

Flag 21	Flag 55	Result of Print Function
Clear	Set or clear	The print function is ignored and program execution continues with the next line.
Set	Clear	Program execution halts and displays <b>Printing Is Disabled.</b>
Set	Set	The print function is executed and the program continues.

## Printing With VIEW and AVIEW

Like print functions, VIEW and AVIEW also test flags 21 and 55. In addition to performing their normal display functions, VIEW and AVIEW produce printed output if flags 21 and 55 are set.

**To record results, set flag 21.** If a program uses VIEW or AVIEW to display important results, set flag 21. Then if printing is enabled (flag 55 set), the information is printed.

If printing is disabled (flag 55 clear), the program stops so you can write down the displayed information. Press **R/S** to continue.

**To display, but not record messages, clear flag 21.** If flag 21 is clear, flag 55 is ignored by VIEW and AVIEW. The information is displayed and program execution continues.

---

## Working With Alpha Data

This section describes the functions for manipulating data in the Alpha register. All of the techniques presented here can be executed manually; however, they are primarily meant for programming.

### Moving Data Into and Out of the Alpha Register

In addition to keying data directly into the Alpha register or entering strings in programs, there are several ways to move data into and out of the Alpha register.

**Storing Alpha Data.** The ASTO (*Alpha store*) function copies the first six characters in the Alpha register into the specified variable or register. To execute the ASTO function:

1. If Alpha mode is not on, press **ALPHA**.
2. Press **ASTO**. (The **STO** key executes ASTO when Alpha mode is on.)

3. Specify where you want the string to be stored:
  - *In a storage register.* Key in the register number.
  - *In a variable.* Press a menu key to select the variable or use the ALPHA menu to type the name.
  - *In a stack register.* Press  $\square$  followed by `ST L`, `ST X`, `ST Y`, `ST Z`, or `ST T`.

**For example, to copy the first six characters of the Alpha register** into the X-register, press  $\square$  `ALPHA` `ASTO`  $\square$  `ST X`.

**Recalling Data Into the Alpha Register.** The ARCL (*Alpha recall*) function recalls data into the Alpha register, appending it to the current contents. To execute the ARCL function:

1. If Alpha mode is not on, press  $\square$  `ALPHA`.
2. Press `ARCL`. (The `RCL` key executes ARCL when Alpha mode is on.)
3. Specify the storage register, variable, or stack register you want to recall. (Refer to step 3 above.)

If you recall a number into the Alpha register, it is converted to Alpha characters and formatted using the current display format. Recalling a matrix into the Alpha register recalls its descriptor (such as `[ 2×3 Matrix ]`).

When the Alpha register fills up, characters at the left end of the register (the “oldest” characters) are lost to make room for the new data.






### To recall an integer into the Alpha register:

1. Place the number in the X-register.
2. Press  $\square$  `PGM.FCN`  $\square$   $\square$  `RIP` (*Alpha append integer part*). The AIP function appends the integer part of the number in the X-register to the current contents of the Alpha register.

You can produce a similar result by using FIX 0 display format, clearing flag 29 (to remove the decimal point), and recalling a number using ARCL. A number recalled this way, however, may be rounded if the fractional part of the number is greater than or equal to 0.5.



## To translate a number into a character:

1. Key in the character code (the allowed range is 0 through 255). Appendix E lists all of the display characters and their character codes.
2. Press      (*X to Alpha*).

If the X-register contains an Alpha string, the entire string is appended to the Alpha register.

If the X-register contains a matrix, the XTOA function uses each element in the matrix as a character code or Alpha string. XTOA begins with the first element (1:1) and continues rowwise (to the right) until it reaches the end of the matrix. If the Alpha register fills up, only the last 44 characters to be appended will remain.

The XTOA function is especially useful for building a graphics string in the Alpha register. Refer to the program on page 139.

**To translate a character into its character code:** Execute the ATOX (*Alpha to X*) function. ATOX converts the left-most character in the Alpha register into its character code (0 through 255) and returns the number to the X-register. The character is deleted from the Alpha register, shifting the rest of the string left one position. If the Alpha register is empty, ATOX returns zero.

For example, if the Alpha register contains *Janet*, executing ATOX deletes the *J* and returns its character code (74) to the X-register.

## Searching the Alpha Register

To search the Alpha register for a character or string, use the POSA (*position in Alpha*) function. POSA searches the Alpha register for the *target* in the X-register. If a match is found, POSA returns the position number where the target was found (counting the left-most character as position 0). If a match is not found, POSA returns  $-1$ .

The target may be a character code or an Alpha string. POSA saves a copy of the target in the LAST X register.

## Manipulating Alpha Strings

Once a string is in the Alpha register, there are several functions you can use to manipulate the data.

**Finding the Length of an Alpha String.** The ALENG (*Alpha length*) function returns to the X-register the number of characters in the Alpha register.

**Shifting the Alpha Register.** The ASHF (*Alpha shift*) function deletes the six left-most characters in the Alpha register. You may want to shift characters out of the Alpha register after using the ASTO function.

**Rotating the Alpha Register.** The AROT (*Alpha rotate*) function rotates the contents of the Alpha register by  $n$  characters ( $n$  is specified in the X-register). If  $n$  is positive, the rotation is to the left. If  $n$  is negative, the rotation is to the right.

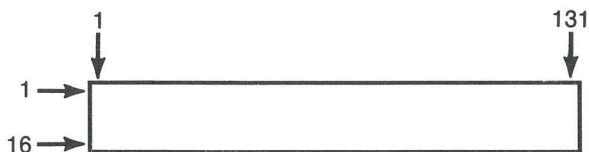
---

## Graphics

Using the functions PIXEL and AGRAPH (*Alpha graphics*), you can create graphics in the display of the HP-42S. The "DPLOT" and "PLOT" programs in the next chapter use the PIXEL function to produce graphs of functions (pages 156 and 160).




### Turning On a Pixel in the Display

The PIXEL function turns on a pixel (one dot in the display) using the numbers in the X- and Y-registers. The  $x$ -value specifies the column (numbered from left to right; 1 through 131), and the  $y$ -value specifies the row (numbered from top to bottom; 1 through 16).





For a program to turn on a pixel in the display, it should:

1. Put the row number in the Y-register and the column number in the X-register.
2. Execute the PIXEL function (  PGM.FCN   PIXEL ).

Executing PIXEL turns on the specified pixel and sets the message flags (flags 50 and 51). This allows subsequent PIXEL and AGRAPH instructions to add to the existing display.

To start with a clear display, execute CLLCD (*clear liquid crystal display*) before turning pixels on.




## Drawing Lines in the Display

The PIXEL function can also be used to draw vertical and horizontal lines across the display. To draw a vertical line, use a negative  $x$ -value ( $-1$  through  $-131$ ). To draw a horizontal line, use a negative  $y$ -value ( $-1$  through  $-16$ ). If both numbers are negative, then PIXEL draws two lines—one vertical and one horizontal.

The plotting programs at the end of the next chapter use this feature of PIXEL to draw an  $x$ -axis.

## Building a Graphics Image Using the Alpha Register

To create a graphics image in the display, a program should:

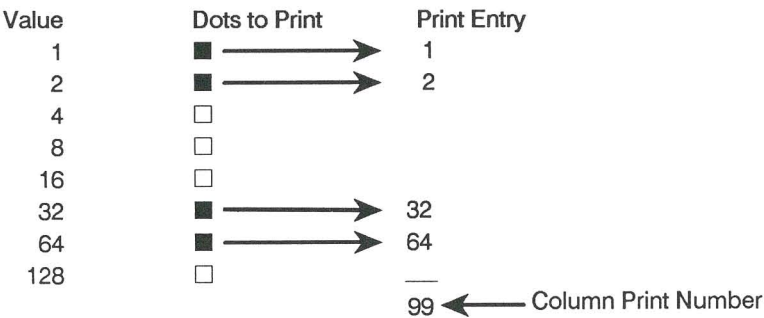
1. Create a string of characters in the Alpha register with each character specifying a column of eight pixels.
2. Specify where in the display the upper-left corner of the image should begin. Put that pixel-row number in the Y-register and the pixel-column number in the X-register.
3. Execute the AGRAPH function (  PGM.FCN   AGRAPH ).

The status of flags 34 and 35 determine how the graphics image is displayed:

Flag 34	Flag 35	How the AGRAPH Image is Displayed
Clear*	Clear*	The image is merged with the existing display (logical OR).
Clear	Set	The image overwrites all pixels in that portion of the display.
Set	Clear	Duplicate "on" pixels get turned "off."
Set	Set	All pixels are reversed (logical XOR).
* Default setting.		

**Creating an Alpha String for AGRAPH.** The AGRAPH function uses the character code of each character in the Alpha register as an eight-bit pattern for a column of pixels.

Each pixel in a column has a special value. Adding the values for all the pixels you want to display in a single column gives you the character code needed to produce that column.



To append the character to the Alpha register, key in the character code and then execute the XTOA function. You can type the character directly into the Alpha register if it is a typeable character. (Refer to the character table in appendix E.) For example, the character code 99 (calculated above) is the code for "c".

**Example: Using Binary Mode to Calculate a Column Value.** You can use the built-in Base application\* to convert a column pattern into a character code. For example, select the Base application and Binary mode.



Key in the column pattern above as a binary number. Start at the bottom, keying in a 0 for “off” pixels and a 1 for “on” pixels. (You can omit the leading zero if you want.)

01100011

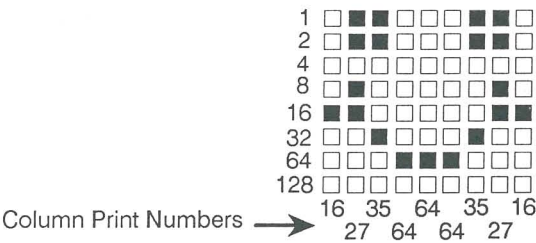


Display this number in Decimal mode.



You don’t have to use Decimal mode to use this number. While still in Binary mode, you could append the character to the Alpha register using the XTOA function.

**Example: Displaying a Happy Face.** The program below creates this happy face in the display.



Use the character table in appendix E to look up these character codes. If the table does not have keystrokes for a particular character (in this case character number 27), then append it to the Alpha register with the XTOA function. Refer to lines 03, 04, and 06 in the following program.

\* Refer to chapter 16 for more information on the Base application.

01 LBL "SMILE"	
02 "←"	Character number 16.
03 27	Character number 27.
04 XTOA	
05 ├"#####"	Character numbers 35, 64, 64, 64, and 35.
06 XTOA	Character 27 (X-register still contains 27).
07 ├"←"	Character number 16.
08 5	Specifies the location of the image: row 5, column 62. (To key in the two numbers press 5 <b>ENTER</b> <b>◀</b> 62.)
09 62	
10 CLLCD	Displays the image and stops.
11 AGRAPH	
12 END	

Key in the "SMILE" program. (If you are still in the Base application from the previous example, press **EXIT**.)

<b>▣</b> <b>GTO</b> <b>◻</b> <b>◻</b> <b>▣</b> <b>PRGM</b>	00▶( 0-Byte Prgm ) 01 .END.
<b>▣</b> <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>LBL</b> SMILE <b>ENTER</b>	00 ( 9-Byte Prgm ) 01▶LBL "SMILE"
<b>▣</b> <b>ALPHA</b> <b>←</b> <b>ENTER</b> *	01 LBL "SMILE" 02▶"←"
27	02 "←" 03▶27_
<b>▣</b> <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>▼</b> <b>▼</b> <b>XTOA</b>	03 27 04▶XTOA

\* After displaying the ALPHA menu (**▣** **ALPHA**), the keystrokes to type ← are: **▼** **◀▶▶▶** **◻** **←**.



## Programming Techniques

---

This chapter covers functions and techniques for writing more sophisticated programs. You'll learn how to use:

- GTO (*go to*) and XEQ (*execute*) instructions to cause program branching to execute subroutines and other programs.
- The programmable menu to create *menu-driven* programs.
- Conditional tests and counters to create program *loops* (routines that repeat themselves).
- Tests and comparisons to make decisions and cause program branching.

---

### Branching

*Branching* occurs whenever the program pointer moves to a line other than the “next” line—that is, whenever program instructions are not executed sequentially. The two primary functions for branching are GTO and XEQ.

Often flag tests and comparisons are followed by branching instructions that are executed according to the result of the test or comparison.

### Branching to a Label (GTO)

Labels can be considered *destinations* for branching instructions. As explained in chapter 8, global labels can be accessed from anywhere in memory and local labels can be accessed only from within their own program.

There are three programmable forms of GTO instructions:


- GTO *nn* for branching to a local numeric label (where *nn* is the label number).
- GTO *label* for branching to a local Alpha label (where *label* is a single letter A through J or a through e).
- GTO "*label*" for branching to a global label (where *label* is the Alpha label).

Here are a few examples:

#### Example

Instruction:	Description (Keys):
--------------	---------------------

GTO 03	Branches to LBL 03 (  03 ).
--------	--

GTO A	Branches to LBL A (  ENTER A ENTER ).
-------	---

GTO "AREA"	Branches to LBL "AREA" (  AREA ).
------------	--

**Executing GTO in a Program.** In a running program, a GTO instruction causes program execution to branch to the specified label and continue running at that line.

**Executing GTO From the Keyboard.** Executing a GTO instruction from the keyboard moves the program pointer to the corresponding label. No program lines are executed.

**Indirect Addressing With GTO.** The following examples show how indirect addressing can be used with GTO instructions. That is, the label to be branched to is specified in a variable or register.





## Example



### Instruction:

### Description (Keys):




GTO IND 12

Branches to the label specified in storage register  $R_{12}$  (   12 ). For example, if  $R_{12}$  contains the string "AREA", then program execution branches to LBL "AREA".

GTO IND "ABC"

Branches to the label specified in the variable ABC (   ABC ). For example, if ABC contains the number 17, then program execution branches to LBL 17.

GTO IND ST X



Branches to the label specified in the X-register (    ). For example, if the X-register contains the number 96, then program execution branches to LBL 96.

## Calling Subroutines (XEQ and RTN)

The GTO function, described above, is used to make a simple program branch. XEQ is used in much the same way with one important difference: *after* an XEQ instruction has transferred execution to the specified label, the next RTN (*return*) or END instruction causes the program to branch *back* to the instruction that immediately follows the XEQ instruction.

XEQ instructions are *subroutine calls*. A subroutine call is not complete until a RTN or END has been executed to return program execution to the line following the XEQ instruction.

XEQ is also used to run programs from the keyboard (  ).

**Example: GTO versus XEQ.** Consider the following two programs. If you execute the first program (   ), TONE 0 never executes because the GTO instruction branches to the second program. Program execution halts when the END is reached in the second program.

```

01 LBL "PRG1"
02 GTO "PRG2"
03 TONE 0
04 END

```

```

01 LBL "PRG2"
02 TONE 9
03 END

```

However, if you replace line 02 of the first program with an XEQ instruction (XEQ "PRG2"), both TONEs will sound. When the END is encountered in the second program, execution returns to the line immediately following the XEQ. Program execution halts at the END in the first program.

```

01 LBL "PRG1"
02 XEQ "PRG2"
03 TONE 0
04 END

```

```

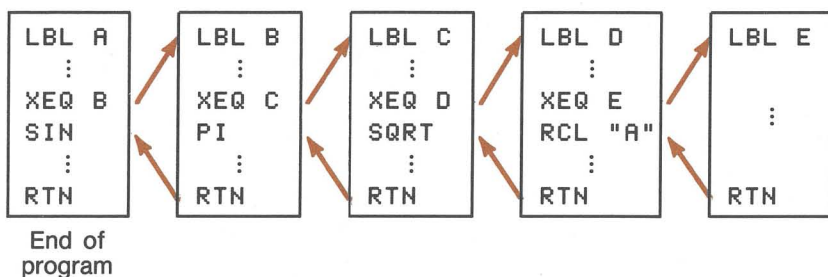
01 LBL "PRG2"
02 TONE 9
03 END

```


**Subroutine Return Locations.** When an XEQ instruction calls a subroutine, the HP-42S remembers the location of that XEQ instruction so that execution can return there when the subroutine is completed.

For example, this illustration shows how the calculator *nests* subroutines by remembering return locations. The HP-42S can remember up to eight pending return locations.

Main program  
(top level)





**Loss of Subroutine Returns.** Pending return locations are lost under the following conditions:










- If there are already eight pending return locations when another subroutine or program is called with an XEQ, the first (oldest) return location is lost.\* In this case, program execution never returns to the first XEQ that called a subroutine. Instead, execution halts when the first subroutine is finally completed because there are no further return locations.
- All pending return locations are lost when you execute any program from the keyboard or perform any other operation (while program execution is halted) that alters the program pointer. Pressing  **SST** or **R/S** does not cause return locations to be lost.

---

## The Programmable Menu

The HP-42S has a programmable menu which is used to cause program branching. The MENU function selects the programmable menu. The menu is displayed when the program stops. You can define each key in the menu so that when the key is pressed, a particular GTO or XEQ instruction executes. You can even define , , and **EXIT**.

### To define a menu key:

1. Enter a string into the Alpha register. This is the text that appears in the menu label above the key. (The Alpha register is not used when defining , , or **EXIT**.)
2. Execute KEYG (*on key, go to*) or KEYX (*on key, execute*). (These functions are in the last row of the PGM.FCN menu; press  **PGM.FCN** .)
3. Specify which key you want to define:
  - Press , , , **LOG**, **LN**, **XEQ**, , , or **EXIT**.
  - Or, key in the key number, 1 through 9.

\* The Solver and Integration applications also create return locations. If the calculator loses one of these returns, program execution stops and an error message is displayed.

4. Specify a program label using *one* of these methods:

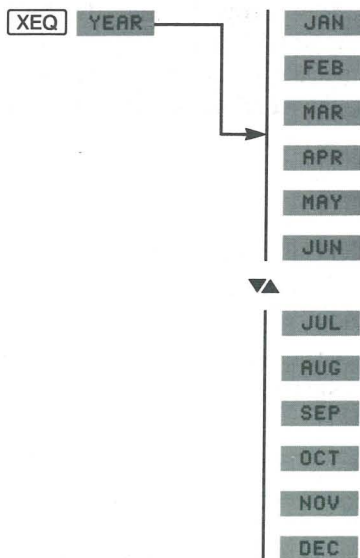
- Select an existing global label by pressing the corresponding menu key.
- Use the ALPHA menu to type an Alpha label (local or global):  
 label .
- Key in a two-digit numeric label.

Repeat this procedure for each menu key you want to define. Defining a key replaces any previous definition that may exist for that key.

**To display the programmable menu:** Execute the MENU function (press   ).

**To clear all programmable menu key definitions:** Execute the CLMENU (*clear menu*) function (press   ).

**Example.** The program segment listed below shows how the programmable menu can be used to emulate this menu:



```

01 LBL "YEAR"
02 LBL A
03 "JAN"
04 KEY 1 XEQ 01
05 "FEB"
06 KEY 2 XEQ 02
07 "MAR"
08 KEY 3 XEQ 03
09 "APR"
10 KEY 4 XEQ 04
11 "MAY"
12 KEY 5 XEQ 05
13 "JUN"
14 KEY 6 XEQ 06







```

Defines the first row of the "YEAR" menu. A different subroutine is executed for each month. The routines for the first six months are labeled with local labels 01 through 06.

```

15 KEY 7 GTO B
16 KEY 8 GTO B
17 KEY 9 GTO 99


```

Defines the , , and  keys. The  and  keys are defined to go to the same program label (LBL B) because this is a two-row menu; either key should display the second row. The  key is defined to cause a branch to a routine that exits the menu.

```

18 MENU
19 LBL 20
20 STOP
21 GTO 20

```

The programmable menu is selected and the program stops. Because of this little loop, pressing  keeps the program at line 20.




```

22 LBL B
23 "JUL"
24 KEY 1 XEQ 07
25 "AUG"
26 KEY 2 XEQ 08
27 "SEP"
28 KEY 3 XEQ 09
29 "OCT"
30 KEY 4 XEQ 10
31 "NOV"
32 KEY 5 XEQ 11
33 "DEC"
34 KEY 6 XEQ 12

```

Defines the menu keys for the second row of the "YEAR" menu.



35 KEY 7 GTO A	Defines the  and  to return to the first row of the menu. The  key does not need to be define again. The definition made at line 17 is still in effect.
36 KEY 8 GTO A	
37 LBL 21	Stops the program. The programmable menu is still selected (line 18).
38 STOP	
39 GTO 21	
40 LBL 99	The menu definitions are cleared and the menu is exited. If this program was called as a subroutine from another program, execution returns to that program.
41 CLMENU	
42 EXITALL	
43 RTN	
44 LBL 01	The rest of the program consists of the subroutines for each month (LBL 01 ... RTN, LBL 02 ... RTN, and so on). For example, you might want to create a message in each of these subroutines that displays the full name of the month and the number of days in that month.
:	

Many examples in the *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020) use the programmable menu.

---

## Local Label Searches

Searches for local labels occur only within the current program. To find a local label, the calculator first searches sequentially downward through the current program, starting at the location of the program pointer. If the specified label is not found before reaching the end of the program, the calculator continues the search from the beginning of the program.

A local label search can consume a significant amount of time, depending on the length of the current program and the distance to the label. To minimize searching time, the calculator remembers the distance from the GTO or XEQ instruction to the specified local label.\* This eliminates the searching time for subsequent executions of that same GTO or XEQ instruction.

---

## Global Label Searches

When the calculator searches for a global label, the search begins with the *last* global label (bottom of program memory) and proceeds *upward*, stopping at the first label that matches the specified label. The search is in the same order as the labels are listed in the program catalog.

---

## Conditional Functions

Flag tests and comparisons are *conditional functions*. They express a proposition that is either true or false depending on current conditions.

- Executing a conditional function from the keyboard generates a message: *Yes* if the proposition is currently true, or *No* if the proposition is currently false.
- Executing a conditional function in a program causes a program branch using the *do-if-true* rule. That is, the program line immediately following the conditional is executed *only* if the condition is true. If the condition is false, the next line is *skipped*. That is, DO the next instruction IF the condition is TRUE.

\* The distance to the label is stored internally as part of the GTO or XEQ instruction. If this distance is greater than 4,096 bytes in either direction (128 bytes for short form labels; LBL 00 through LBL 14), the calculator cannot store the distance and a search must take place for each execution of the instruction.



# Flag Tests

The following table shows the four flag test functions and how each causes program branching (a skipped line) based on the status of the flag being tested. (These functions are in the FLAGS menu.)

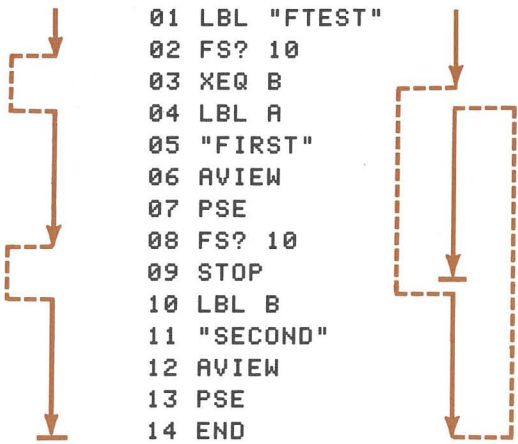
Flag Test	If Flag Is Set	If Flag Is Clear
FS?	Execute the next program line.	Skip the next program line.
FC?	Skip the next program line.	Execute the next program line.
FS?C*	Clear flag and execute the next program line.	Clear flag and skip the next program line.
FC?C*	Clear flag and skip the next program line.	Clear flag and execute the next program line.

\* This function can only be used with flags 00 through 35 and 81 through 99.

The following program demonstrates a subroutine call (line 03) and flag tests (lines 02 and 08). If flag 10 is clear, FIRST is displayed, and then SECOND. If flag 10 is set, the order of the messages is reversed.



Flag 10 Clear

Flag 10 Set





## Comparisons

### To compare the X-register with zero:

1. Press  **PGM.FCN**  **X?0**.
2. Press **X=0?**, **X≠0?**, **X<0?**, **X>0?**, **X≤0?**, or **X≥0?**.

### To compare the X-register with the Y-register:

1. Press  **PGM.FCN**  **X?Y**.
2. Press **X=Y?**, **X≠Y?**, **X<Y?**, **X>Y?**, **X≤Y?**, or **X≥Y?**.

If you execute one of these functions from the keyboard, the calculator displays **Yes** or **No**, indicating the result of the test. If a program executes one of these functions, the calculator follows the do-if-true rule.

## Testing the Data Type

The following four functions test the type of data in the X-register. They also follow the do-if-true rule for program execution.

Function	Test Proposition
REAL?	Does the X-register contain a real number?
CPX?	Does the X-register contain a complex number?
MAT?	Does the X-register contain a matrix?
STR?	Does the X-register contain an Alpha string?

## Bit Test

The **BIT?** (*bit test*) function tests a single bit of a number. If the  $x^{\text{th}}$  bit of  $y$  is a 1, then the test is true. Refer to chapter 16 for more information on the Base application and logic functions.

---

## Looping

A loop is a sequence of program instructions that starts with a label and ends with a branch back to that label. An infinite loop is the simplest kind. Once started, this program runs until you stop it with **R/S** or **EXIT**.

```
01 LBL "LOOP"  
02 BEEP  
03 GTO "LOOP"  
04 END
```

## Looping Using Conditional Functions

When you want to perform an operation until a certain condition is met, but you don't know how many times the loop must repeat, you can create a loop with a conditional test and a GTO instruction.

For example, the following program loops until the RAN (*random number*) function returns a number that is at least 0.9. That is, the loop repeats if the random number is less than 0.9.

```
01 LBL "RANDOM"  
02 LBL 01  
03 0.9  
04 RAN  
05 X<Y?  
06 GTO 01  
07 END
```

Why does this program have two labels? Since the HP-42S only has to search for a local label once, the loop executes faster by branching to a local label. (Refer to "Local Label Searches" on page 148.) What's more, using a local label and corresponding GTO instruction (rather than branching to the global label) saves five bytes of program memory.

## Loop-Control Functions

When you want to execute a loop a specific number of times, you can use special functions for that purpose—ISG (*increment, skip if greater*) and DSE (*decrement, skip if less than or equal*). Both functions (located in the PGM.FCN menu) take a parameter identifying the variable or register containing the number that controls the looping.

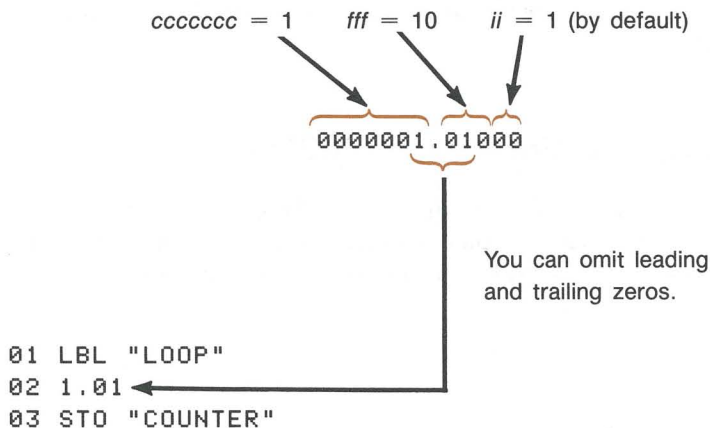
The format of the loop-control number is *cccccc.fffii*, where:

- *cccccc* is the current counter value. Executing ISG or DSE increments or decrements *cccccc* by the value of *ii*.
- *fff* is the final counter value.
- *ii* is the increment/decrement value. If *ii* is 00 (or unspecified), the calculator uses a default value of 01.

Executing ISG increments *cccccc* by *ii*, and then compares the resulting value of *cccccc* with *fff*. If *cccccc* is greater than *fff*, the next program instruction is skipped.

Executing DSE decrements *cccccc* by *ii*, and then compares the resulting value of *cccccc* with *fff*. If *cccccc* is less than or equal to *fff*, the next program instruction is skipped.

**Example: Using the ISG Function.** The following program uses ISG to loop 10 times. The loop counter is stored into a variable named *COUNTER* and is interpreted by the ISG function like this:



```
04 LBL 01
05 VIEW "COUNTER"
06 PSE
07 ISG "COUNTER"
08 GTO 01
09 "DONE"
10 RVIEW
11 END
```

---

## Controlling the CUSTOM Menu

If flag 27 is set when a program stops, the CUSTOM menu is displayed. Before displaying the menu, however, the calculator also checks flag 72.\* If flag 72 is clear (indicated by **KEY** in the MODES menu), the CUSTOM menu displays menu assignments you have made. If flag 72 is set (indicated by **LCLB** in the MODES menu), the CUSTOM menu displays keys for executing local labels (page 301).

---

## Example Programs

The programs in this section use many of the functions and techniques presented in chapters 8, 9, and 10. By examining them and using them, you should gain an even better understanding of programming. For many more programming examples, refer to the *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020).

### The Display Plot Program ("DPLOT")

The "DPLOT" program plots a function in the display of the calculator. The function that you plot is entered into the calculator as a program. There are two general forms for a function program:

\* The calculator also checks flag 72 when you use **CUSTOM** to display the CUSTOM menu.



- As  $f(x)$ , where the program returns a value using an input value in the X-register. For example, to plot a sine curve ( $f(x) = \sin x$ ), use a program like this:

```
01 LBL "SINE"
02 SIN
03 END
```

- As a Solver program. If the program uses menu variables, it is assumed to be written in the proper form for use with the Solver. Refer to "Writing a Program for the Solver" on page 179.

The name of the function is stored in a variable named FCN. Since Alpha strings stored in variables are limited to six characters, the global label that you use to identify the function cannot be longer than six characters.

You can determine what portion of the function is plotted by entering the limits of the plot:

YMIN = bottom of the display  
 YMAX = top of the display  
 XMIN = left end of the display  
 XMAX = right end of the display

You can also specify where you would like the  $x$ -axis to appear. Usually, the axis is at  $y = 0$ . If you don't want an axis, specify a  $y$ -value that is less than YMIN or greater than YMAX.

### To use the "DPLOT" program:

1. Key the "DPLOT" program into your calculator. (The "DPLOT" program uses 234 bytes of program memory.)
2. Key in a program for the function you want to plot.
3. Press  $\boxed{\text{XEQ}} \boxed{\text{DPLOT}}$ . The program displays a variable menu containing YMIN, YMAX, AXIS, XMIN, and XMAX. Store a value into each variable: key in a number and then press the corresponding menu key.
4. Press  $\boxed{\text{R/S}}$ . The program displays the current function name stored in FCN (if there is one) along with the Alpha menu.
5. If necessary, type the name of the function you want to plot.

6. Press **[R/S]**. If the function does not use menu variables, plotting begins.
7. If the function does use menu variables, the program stops and displays the variable menu. Using the variable menu:
  - a. Store a value into each of the known variables: key in a number and then press the corresponding menu key.
  - b. Press a menu key to select the plot variable. Plotting begins.

When the plot is finished, the program prints a copy of the display (if printing is enabled).

The example on page 185 uses "DPLOT" to plot a function for the Solver.

**Program:**

**Comments:**

01 LBL "DPLOT"	Declares the menu variables.
02 MVAR "YMIN"	
03 MVAR "YMAX"	
04 MVAR "AXIS"	
05 MVAR "XMIN"	
06 MVAR "XMAX"	
07 LBL A	Selects the variable menu, displays a
08 VARMENU "DPLOT"	Ready message, and stops the program.
09 "Ready"	
10 PROMPT	
11 CLA	Recalls the current function name (if
12 SF 25	there is one) into the Alpha register.
13 RCL "FCN"	
14 CF 25	
15 STR?	
16 ARCL ST X	
17 AON	Turns on the ALPHA menu and stops the
18 STOP	program so a function name can be entered or changed.



```

19 ROFF
20 ALENG
21 X=0?
22 GTO A
23 ASTO "FCN"

24 CLA
25 CF 81
26 SF 25
27 VARMENU IND "FCN"
28 FC?C 25
29 SF 81

30 FC? 81
31 STOP
32 EXITALL
33 ALENG
34 X=0?
35 SF 81
36 ASTO 03

37 15
38 RCL "YMAX"
39 RCL- "YMIN"
40 ÷
41 STO 00

42 RCL "XMIN"
43 STO 01
44 1.131
45 STO 02

46 CLLCD
47 XEQ "AXIS"

48 LBL 01
49 RCL 01
50 FC? 81
51 STO IND 03
52 XEQ IND "FCN"

```

Turns off the ALPHA menu and tests the length of the Alpha register. If the Alpha register is empty, execution returns to the first variable menu. Otherwise, the function name is stored into FCN.

Selects the variable menu for the function. If there are no menu variables, flag 81 is set.

Stops to display the variable menu (if flag 81 is clear). Tests the Alpha register to see if a plot variable has been selected. If not, flag 81 is set. The variable name is stored into R<sub>03</sub>.

Calculates the *y*-value of one pixel.

Stores the first *x*-value and a loop counter. (There are 131 pixels across the display.)

Clears the display and draws an axis.

Recalls the current *x*-value. If flag 81 is clear, the *x*-value is stored into the plot variable. The function is then evaluated using the current *x*-value.

```

53 XEQ 02
54 RCL 02
55 PIXEL

56 RCL "XMAX"
57 RCL- "XMIN"
58 131
59 ÷
60 STO+ 01

61 ISG 02
62 GTO 01
63 PRLCD
64 RTN
65 GTO A

66 LBL 02
67 RCL- "YMIN"
68 RCL× 00
69 16
70 -
71 X>0?
72 CLX
73 ABS
74 RTN

75 LBL "AXIS"
76 RCL "AXIS"
77 XEQ 02
78 +/-
79 1
80 PIXEL
81 END

```

The value of the function is converted into a pixel number.

The  $x$ -value is incremented.

If the plot is done, the display is printed and the program stops. Line 65 allows the program to be restarted by pressing R/S.

Calculates a pixel number for the given  $y$ -value.

Draws an  $x$ -axis.

## The Printer Plot Program ("PLOT")

The "PLOT" program plots a function on the HP 82240A printer. The plot is created in sections. Each section is plotted in the display and then printed. The result is a continuous plot of the function on a strip of paper. (The  $x$ -axis runs lengthwise on the paper.)

Before plotting a function, you must write a program that expresses the function. The name of the function is stored into a variable named FCN. Since Alpha strings stored in variables are limited to six characters, the global label that you use to identify the function must be six or fewer characters.

You can determine what portion of the function is plotted by entering the limits of the plot:

YMIN = left edge of paper  
YMAX = right edge of paper  
XMIN = beginning  $x$ -value  
XMAX = ending  $x$ -value  
XINC = increment of  $x$ -values

The  $x$ -values are printed at increments determined by XINC. If you do not want these labels on your plot, set flag 00.

You can specify where you would like the  $x$ -axis to appear. Usually, the axis is at  $y = 0$ . If you do not want an axis, set flag 01.

### To use the "PLOT" program:

1. Key the "PLOT" program into your calculator. (The "PLOT" program uses 337 bytes of program memory.)
2. Key in a program for the function you want to plot.
3. Press **[XEQ]** **[PLOT]**. The program displays a variable menu containing YMIN, YMAX, AXIS, XMIN, XMAX, and XINC. Store a value into each variable: key in a number and then press the corresponding menu key.
4. Press **[R/S]**. The program displays the current function name stored in FCN (if there is one) along with the Alpha menu.
5. If necessary, type the name of the function you want to plot.
6. Press **[R/S]** to begin the plot.

01 LBL "PLOT"	Declares the menu variables.
02 MVAR "YMIN"	
03 MVAR "YMAX"	
04 MVAR "AXIS"	
05 MVAR "XMIN"	
06 MVAR "XMAX"	
07 MVAR "XINC"	
08 LBL A	
09 VARMENU "PLOT"	Selects the variable menu and stops the program.
10 STOP	
11 EXITALL	
12 XEQ 07	Exits from the variable menu and inputs a function name.
13 PRON	
14 ADV	Prints the header information.
15 "Plot of:"	
16 PRA	
17 ADV	
18 SF 12	
19 CLA	
20 ARCL "FCN"	
21 PRA	
22 ADV	
23 CF 12	
24 PRV "YMIN"	
25 PRV "YMAX"	
26 PRV "AXIS"	
27 PRV "XMIN"	
28 PRV "XMAX"	
29 PRV "XINC"	
30 ADV	
31 "← YMIN"	
32 "← YMAX →"	
33 PRA	

34 130	Calculates the $y$ -value of one pixel.
35 RCL "YMAX"	
36 RCL- "YMIN"	
37 ÷	
38 STO 00	
39 RCL "XMIN"	Stores the first $x$ -value.
40 STO 01	
41 LBL 00	Clears the display.
42 CLLCD	
43 FC? 00	Labels the $x$ -increment if flag 00 is clear.
44 XEQ 05	
45 FC? 01	Draws an axis if flag 01 is clear.
46 XEQ 06	
47 1.016	Stores a loop counter into $R_{02}$ .
48 STO 02	(There are 16 rows of pixels in the display.)
49 LBL 01	Plots the current point.
50 RCL "FCN"	
51 STR?	
52 XEQ 04	
53 RCL "XINC"	Increments the $x$ -value.
54 16	
55 ÷	
56 STO+ 01	
57 RCL "XMAX"	Goes to LBL 03 if the plot is done.
58 RCL 01	
59 X>Y?	
60 GT0 03	
61 ISG 02	Prints the display if all 16 values have been plotted.
62 GT0 01	
63 PRLCD	
64 GT0 00	

```

65 LBL 03
66 PRLCD
67 RTN
68 GTO A

69 LBL 04
70 RCL 01
71 XEQ IND ST Y
72 SF 24
73 RCL- "YMIN"
74 RCL× 00
75 1
76 +
77 CF 24
78 RCL 02
79 X<>Y
80 X>0?
81 PIXEL
82 RTN

83 LBL 05
84 CF 21
85 CLA
86 ARCL 01
87 AVIEW
88 SF 21
89 RTN

90 LBL 06
91 1
92 RCL "AXIS"
93 RCL- "YMIN"
94 RCL× 00
95 +/-
96 1
97 -
98 PIXEL
99 +/-
100 2
101 -
102 "xxxxxx"
103 AGRAPH
104 RTN

```

Prints the final display. Line 68 allows the program to be restarted by pressing **R/S**.

Evaluates the function at the current  $x$ -value and then plots the appropriate pixel.

Puts an  $x$ -value into the display to label the  $x$ -axis.

Plots an  $x$ -axis. Note that line 102 is a string of multiply characters (**ALPHA** **x** **x** **x** **x** **x** **ENTER**).

```

105 LBL 07
106 CLA
107 SF 25
108 RCL "FCN"
109 CF 25
110 STR?
111 ARCL ST X
112 AON
113 STOP
114 AOFF
115 ASTO "FCN"
116 END

```

Recalls the current function name (if there is one) into the Alpha register. Turns on the ALPHA menu and stops the program. When the program continues (when  $\boxed{R/S}$  is pressed), the function name is stored into FCN.

**Example: Using the Printer Plot Program.** Key in the "PLOT" program listed above and the program "MISCFN" below. Plot the function with  $YMIN = -0.5$ ,  $YMAX = 2$ ,  $AXIS = 0$ ,  $XMIN = -360$ ,  $XMAX = 360$ , and  $XINC = 45$ .

```

01 LBL "MISCFN"
02 ENTER
03 ENTER
04 360
05 ÷
06 X<>Y
07 3
08 ×
09 SIN
10 ×
11 1
12 +
13 END

```

$\boxed{DISP}$   $\boxed{ALL}$   $\boxed{XEQ}$   $\boxed{PLOT}$

.5  $\boxed{+/-}$   $\boxed{YMIN}$

X: 0					
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC

YMIN=-0.5					
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC



2 YMAX

YMAX=2					
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC

0 AXIS

AXIS=0					
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC

360 XMAX

XMAX=360					
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC

$\pm$  XMIN

XMIN=-360					
YMIN	YMAX	ASIS	XMIN	YMAX	XINC

45 XINC

XINC=45					
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC

R/S

AB	CD	EF	GH	IJ	KL	MN	OP	QR	ST	UV	WX	YZ
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

MISCFN R/S

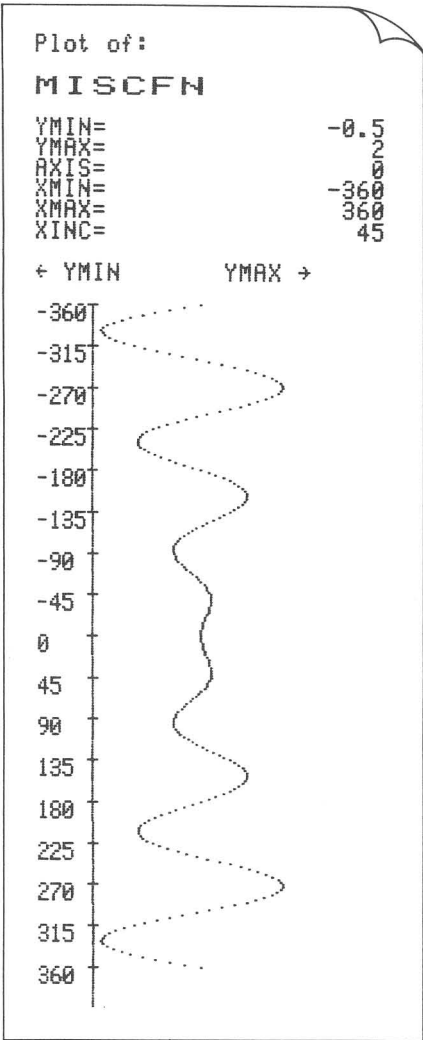
-360

•

360	
-----	--

The printer output is shown on the following page.

**Printer Output:**



## Using HP-41 Programs

---

All programmable functions of the HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators have been built into the HP-42S. This means that programs written for these HP-41\* calculators will run on the HP-42S.

In addition to the HP-41C/CV function set, several new functions have been added to further enhance the programming capabilities of the HP-42S. As you become more familiar with programming, you will probably want to modify your favorite HP-41 programs to take advantage of the expanded function set of the HP-42S.

In this chapter you'll learn about:

- Special considerations you may need to make when running some HP-41 programs.
- Reading HP-41 program listings and keying programs into the HP-42S.
- Enhancing HP-41 programs.

---

## Important Differences



While the HP-42S fully supports the function set of the HP-41C/CV calculators, there are some important differences that you should not overlook. Under most circumstances, these differences will add to the accuracy or capability of an existing HP-41 program. Some HP-42S operations, however, may need to be disabled so operation more closely emulates the HP-41.

\* "HP-41" is used in this chapter to refer to the HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators. Not all extended functions built into the HP-41CX calculator are supported by the HP-42S.








## HP-41 User Keyboard

The CUSTOM menu in the HP-42S provides capabilities that are similar to the User keyboard on the HP-41. That is, you can:




- Assign functions and programs to the CUSTOM menu.
- Use the CUSTOM menu to execute local labels in the current program.

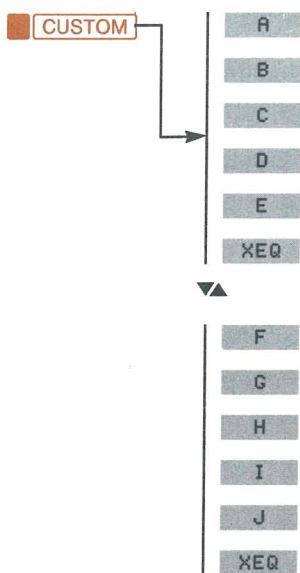
Flag 27, which is used on the HP-41 to control the User keyboard, is used to control the CUSTOM menu. In general, setting flag 27 is equivalent to pressing . Clearing flag 27 is equivalent to pressing  when the CUSTOM menu is displayed.

### To use CUSTOM menu assignments:

1. If necessary, press    (*key assignments*) to select Key-assignment mode. The calculator selects this mode automatically each time you make an assignment to the CUSTOM menu (). The KEYASN function clears flag 72.
2. Press  or   27 to display the CUSTOM menu.

### To use CUSTOM menu for executing local labels:

1. If necessary, press    (*local label*) to select Local-label mode. The LCLBL function sets flag 72.
2. Press  or   27 to display the CUSTOM menu.



Pressing **A** through **J** executes the instructions **XEQ A** through **XEQ J**. Use the shift key (**▢**) to execute **XEQ a** through **XEQ e** (**▢ A** through **▢ E**).

If you are using an HP-41 program that uses local Alpha labels, the instructions may say something like "Press **B**." When you're running the program, remember this means to press **B**. Similarly, if the instructions say "Press **b**," then press **▢ B**.

## Statistical Operations

Statistical operations on the HP-42S have been expanded (beyond the capabilities of the HP-41) to include curve fitting and forecasting. These enhanced features require the use of seven more summation coefficients than the HP-41 uses.

**To use only 6 summation coefficients (like the HP-41):** Press

**▢ STAT ▾ LINΣ**.

**To use all 13 summation coefficients (default):** Press **▢ STAT ▾**

**ALLΣ**.

## Printer Interface

Because the HP-42S uses a one-way infrared printer interface, it cannot tell if a printer is receiving the infrared signal. It's up to you to tell the calculator if a printer is available.

**To enable printing:** Press    .

**To disable printing:** Press    .

Refer to chapter 7, "Printing," for more information.

## The Alpha Register

The Alpha register in the HP-42S is 44 characters long, which is 20 characters longer than the Alpha register in the HP-41. Programs that specifically require the Alpha register to be 24 characters long may not produce the desired output.

## Range of Numbers




The HP-42S uses 15 digits (a 12-digit mantissa and a 3-digit exponent of ten) to represent all real numbers. The HP-41, however, uses a 10-digit mantissa and a 2-digit exponent. Therefore, because of this increased range, calculations that generate an "OUT OF RANGE" error on the HP-41 may not be out of range on the HP-42S.

Note that the HP-42S returns an Out of Range error for the tangent of  $90^\circ$ . The HP-41 returns  $9.999999999 \times 10^{99}$ .




## Data Errors and the Real-Result Flag

Because of its complex-number capabilities, the HP-42S can return results for calculations that would not work on the HP-41. The HP-42S automatically returns a complex number for calculations such as:

- Square root of a negative number.
- Logarithm of a negative number.
- Arc sine or arc cosine of a number whose absolute value is greater than 1.


**To disable complex results for real-number operations:** Press    (*real results only*). This function sets flag 74, which prevents the calculator from producing a complex result. Attempting an operation that would normally return a complex number, displays **Invalid Data**.

Note that flag 74 is only observed if the inputs for a function are real numbers. That is, if one or more inputs for a function are already complex, the result will be complex, regardless of the state of flag 74.

**To enable complex results for real-number operations:** Press    (*complex-result enable*). This function clears flag 74 (default).








## The Display

The HP-42S uses a two-line, 22-character display while the HP-41 uses a single-line, 12-character display. Therefore, programs that specifically format output for the HP-41 display may not produce the desired displays on the HP-42S.

The HP-42S does not *scroll* the display as the HP-41 does. The calculator indicates when a number is too large for the display by showing the ... (ellipsis) character. Press and hold  to see the full-precision value for the number in the X-register.

## Keystrokes

For the most part, the keystroke sequences on the HP-42S are similar to the HP-41. The following exceptions are worth noting:

- Alpha characters are typed with the ALPHA menu (page 37).
- Indirect addressing on the HP-41 uses the shift () key. The HP-42S, on the other hand, uses  or   to specify indirect parameters. (Refer to “Specifying Parameters” in chapter 4.)
- In addition to separating two numbers for calculations, the  key has a few other uses. Refer to “Other Uses of the  Key” on page 47.
- Pressing a key during a PSE (*pause*) causes program execution to stop. Press  to restart the program.



## No Packing

If you're familiar with the HP-41, then you probably have seen the "PACKING" and "TRY AGAIN" messages. Packing removes any unused gaps in program memory. The HP-42S continuously keeps memory packed, so there is no need for a PACK function, and you'll never see a "PACKING" message.

## Function Names

A number of function names used by the HP-42S are different from those on the HP-41, even though the functions work identically.

When keying in an HP-41 program, you can use *either* name for the functions in the following table. The calculator automatically converts each HP-41 function name to the corresponding HP-42S function. Note that HP-41 function names do not appear in the function catalog.

HP-41 Function Name	HP-42S Function Name
CHS	+/-
DEC	→DEC
D-R	→RAD
ENTER↑	ENTER
FACT	N!
FRC	FP
HMS	→HMS
HR	→HR
INT	IP
OCT	→OCT
P-R	→REC
RDN	R↓
R-D	→DEG
R-P	→POL

HP-41 Function Name	HP-42S Function Name
ST+	STO+
ST-	STO-
ST*	STO×
ST/	STO÷
X<=0?	X≤0?
X<=Y?	X≤Y?
*	×
/	÷

**Stack Registers.** The HP-42S distinguishes stack registers with ST. For example, the HP-41 instruction 10 VIEW X is equivalent to the HP-42S instruction 10 VIEW ST X.\*

**Alpha Strings.** The HP-41 displays Alpha strings in programs with the <sup>T</sup> character. The HP-42S, however, surrounds Alpha strings with quotation marks. For example, the HP-41 program line 03 <sup>T</sup>HELLO is equivalent to the HP-42S instruction 03 "HELLO". Similarly, 04 <sup>T</sup>┐THERE is equivalent to 04 ┐"THERE". (Note that some printers may not be able to print the append character.)

**Example: Keying in an HP-41 Program.** The following program was taken unaltered from the *HP-41CV Owner's Manual*. The program finds the roots of the equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ , where  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  are constants. The solutions can be found using the quadratic formula, namely:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

\* It is *not* equivalent to the instruction 10 VIEW "X", which displays a variable named X.

Key the program into memory:

#### HP-41 Program Listing:

```

01 LBL "QUAD"
02 "a=?"
03 PROMPT
04 2
05 *
06 STO 00
07 "b=?"
08 PROMPT
09 CHS
10 STO 01
11 "c=?"
12 PROMPT
13 RCL 00
14 *
15 2
16 *
17 RCL 01
18 X+2
19 X<>Y
20 -
21 X<0?
22 GTO 01
23 SQRT
24 STO 02
25 RCL 01
26 +
27 RCL 00
28 /
29 "ROOTS="
30 ARCL X
31 RVIEW
32 PSE
33 RCL 01
34 RCL 02

```

#### HP-42S Keystrokes:

```

[ ] [GTO] [ ] [ ] [ ] [PRGM]

[ ] [PGM.FCN] [ ] LBL QUAD [ ] [ENTER]
[ ] [ALPHA] a=?
[ ] [PGM.FCN] [ ] [ ] [PROM]

2
[ ] [x]
[ ] [STO] 00
[ ] [ALPHA] b=?
[ ] [PGM.FCN] [ ] [ ] [PROM]

+/-
[ ] [STO] 01
[ ] [ALPHA] c=?
[ ] [PGM.FCN] [ ] [ ] [PROM]

[ ] [RCL] 00
[ ] [x]
2
[ ] [x]
[ ] [RCL] 01
[ ] [x2]
[ ] [xzy]
[ ] [-]
[ ] [PGM.FCN] [ ] [ ] [X?0] [ ] [X<0?]
[ ] [GTO] 01
[ ] [√x]
[ ] [STO] 02
[ ] [RCL] 01
[ ] [+]
[ ] [RCL] 00
[ ] [÷]
[ ] [ALPHA] ROOTS=
[ ] [ARCL] [ ] [ ] [ST X]
[ ] [PGM.FCN] [ ] [ ] [RVIEW]
[ ] [PGM.FCN] [ ] [ ] [PSE]

[ ] [RCL] 01
[ ] [RCL] 02

```

35 -	<b>-</b>
36 RCL 00	<b>RCL</b> 00
37 /	<b>÷</b>
38 "AND "	<b>ALPHA</b> AND (space)
39 ARCL X	<b>ARCL</b> <b>.</b> <b>ST</b> X
40 AVIEW	<b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>AVIEW</b>
41 RTN	<b>RTN</b>
42 LBL 01	<b>LBL</b> 01
43 "ROOTS COMPLEX"	<b>ALPHA</b> ROOTS COMPLEX <b>ENTER</b>
44 AVIEW	<b>AVIEW</b>
45 .END.	<b>EXIT</b>

After keying in the program, exit Program-entry mode and run the program for  $a = 1$ ,  $b = 7$ , and  $c = 12$ .

**EXIT** **XEQ** **QUAD**

a=?  
x: 0.0000

1 **R/S**

b=?  
x: 2.0000

7 **R/S**

c=?  
x: -7.0000

12 **R/S**

ROOTS=-3.0000  
x: -3.0000

AND -4.0000  
x: -4.0000

---

## Enhancing HP-41 Programs

The HP-42S has a number of functions that you may want to incorporate into existing HP-41 programs. The following list can help you start thinking about enhancements for your HP-41 programs:

- Use named variables instead of storage registers to make your programs easier to understand (chapter 3).
- Take advantage of automatic labeling by using the INPUT and VIEW functions (chapter 9).
- Create CUSTOM menu key assignments that aid in executing programs or routines within programs (pages 68 and 112).
- Modify messages to take advantage of the larger display (page 129).
- Use program-controlled menus to enhance the *user interface* of a program (pages 125 and 145).

The *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020) uses the “QUAD” program from the preceding example to demonstrate how to enhance an HP-41 program.



# Part 3

## Built-In Applications

---

<b>Page</b>	<b>178</b>	<b>12: The Solver</b>
	<b>196</b>	<b>13: Numerical Integration</b>
	<b>205</b>	<b>14: Matrix Operations</b>
	<b>228</b>	<b>15: Statistics</b>
	<b>245</b>	<b>16: Base Operations</b>



## The Solver

---

The built-in Solver application (  **SOLVER** ) is a special root finder that enables you to solve an equation for any of its variables. In this chapter, you'll learn how to:


- Solve for an unknown.
- Find the root(s) of an equation.
- Make initial guesses to help guide the Solver to a solution.
- Interpret the results returned by the Solver.
- Use the Solver in a program.

Additional examples using the Solver are included at the end of this chapter. They include the equation of motion for free-fall and the time value of money equation.

---

## Using the Solver

The general procedure for solving is:

1. Enter a program that defines the function to be solved.
2. Press  **SOLVER** and then select the program you want to solve.
3. For each known variable, key in a value and then store the value by pressing the corresponding menu key.
4. Calculate the unknown variable by pressing the corresponding variable menu key.

## Step 1: Writing a Program for the Solver

Before you use the Solver you must write a program or subroutine that evaluates  $f(x)$  for the function you want to solve. When you're writing the program, keep in mind that:

- The program must begin with a global label.
- The program must define the variables that will appear in the Solver variable menu.
- The Solver may execute your program many times to find a solution. Therefore, the length and efficiency of your program may affect the amount of time required to find a solution.

**How the Solver Uses Your Program.** The Solver executes your program using different values for the unknown variable. During each successive evaluation, the Solver moves closer to a solution. In most cases, the Solver eventually finds a value for the unknown variable that causes your function to evaluate to zero. This value is a solution.

Generally, the Solver finds a solution. However, it may encounter mathematical conditions in which a solution cannot be found. Refer to "How the Solver Works" on page 186.

**Simplifying the Function.** As with many mathematical procedures, the first step to solving a problem is simplification. Here you'll have to call upon your own expertise to simplify the equation. In general, you should attempt to combine like terms and constants, reducing the equation to the form

$$f(x) = 0$$

where  $f(x)$  is a function of one or more variables. For example, the equation for the volume of a box is given by

$$\text{Length} \times \text{Width} \times \text{Height} = \text{Volume.}$$

Rearranging terms gives

$$\text{Length} \times \text{Width} \times \text{Height} - \text{Volume} = 0.$$

Written as a program for the Solver, the function looks like this:

```
01 LBL "VOL"   The global label identifies the program.
02 MVAR "L"    These lines identify the menu variables to appear
03 MVAR "W"    in the Solver menu.
04 MVAR "H"
05 MVAR "V"

06 RCL "L"     This is the body of the program that calculates
07 RCL× "W"     $f(x)$ . (Recalling data and recall arithmetic are cov-
08 RCL× "H"    ered in chapter 3.)
09 RCL- "V"
10 END
```

**Defining Menu Variables.** MVAR (*menu variable*) instructions define which variables appear in the Solver variable menu. These definitions must be grouped together (sequential line numbers) and must immediately follow the global label. The calculator ignores MVAR instructions that occur anywhere else in the program.

Your program may use any number of variables; however, only those defined with MVAR appear in the Solver variable menu.

**The Body of the Program.** The main purpose of the program is to calculate the function,  $f(x)$ . Key in the instructions just as if you were solving the equation from the keyboard. Recall each variable as it is needed.

**Example: Keying In a Solver Program.** Key the "VOL" program into your calculator.

A helpful hint: programs that use variables are easier to key in if the variables already exist. Before keying in the program, create the variables  $V$ ,  $H$ ,  $W$ , and  $L$  by storing a zero into each one.

0 [STO] [ENTER] V [ENTER]

Y: 0.0000  
X: 0.0000

[STO] [ENTER] H [ENTER]

Y: 0.0000  
X: 0.0000

[STO] [ENTER] W [ENTER]

Y: 0.0000  
X: 0.0000

[STO] [ENTER] L [ENTER]

Y: 0.0000  
X: 0.0000

Go to a new program space, select Program-entry mode, and key in the "VOL" program listed above.

[GTO] [ ] [ ]

[PRGM]

00 ( 0-Byte Prgm )  
01 .END.

[PGM.FCN] [LBL] VOL [ENTER]

00 ( 7-Byte Prgm )  
01 LBL "VOL"

Pressing [SOLVER] in Program-entry mode displays a menu containing the MVAR function.

[SOLVER] [MVAR] [L]

02 MVAR "L"  
MVAR [ ] [ ] [PSLV] [SOLVE]

[MVAR] [W]

03 MVAR "W"  
MVAR [ ] [ ] [PSLV] [SOLVE]

[MVAR] [H]

04 MVAR "H"  
MVAR [ ] [ ] [PSLV] [SOLVE]

[MVAR] [V] [EXIT]

04 MVAR "H"  
05 MVAR "V"

[RCL] [L]

05 MVAR "V"  
06 RCL "L"

[RCL] [x] [W]

06 RCL "L"  
07 RCLx "W"

[RCL] [x] [H]

07 RCLx "W"  
08 RCLx "H"

RCL - V

08 RCL× "H"  
09 RCL- "V"

Press **EXIT** to exit Program-entry mode.

## Step 2: Selecting a Program To Solve

When you execute the Solver from the keyboard (**SOLVER**), it prompts you to select a program. All global labels that are followed by MVAR instructions are displayed in a menu. Select a program by pressing the corresponding menu key. (If there are more than six labels, use **▲** or **▼** to find the program you're looking for.)

**Example.** Select the "VOL" program entered in the previous example. The Solver immediately displays the variable menu for "VOL".

**SOLVER** VOL

X: 0.0000  
L W H V

## Step 3: Storing the Known Variables

When you select a program to solve, the calculator searches for menu variables used by the program and displays a variable menu. Use the variable menu to store values into the known variables. Refer to page 125 for more information about using variable menus.

**Example.** Store these dimensions: *length* = 5 cm, *width* = 7 cm, and *height* = 12 cm. Key in each value and then press the corresponding menu key.

5 L

L=5.0000  
L W H V

7 W

W=7.0000  
L W H V

12 H

H=12.0000  
L W H V

# Step 4: Solving for the Unknown

After storing the known values, all that remains is to press the menu key for the unknown. The Solver immediately begins searching for a solution. During this process, the Solver displays two numbers. These numbers represent the two current estimates of the solution.

**Example.** Solve for the volume of a box using the dimensions entered in the previous example.

V

V=420.0000

L

W

H

V

The volume is 420 cm<sup>3</sup>.

Using the same length and height, what is the width of a box if the volume is 400 cm<sup>3</sup>? Store the known volume.

400

V

V=400.0000

L

W

H

V

Solve for the width.

W

W=6.6667

L

W

H

V

---

## Choosing Initial Guesses

By entering guesses, you can control the initial estimates used in a search for a solution. Since the search starts in the range between the two initial estimates, entering guesses can reduce the number of iterations required to find a solution. Also, if more than one solution exists, guesses can help select the solution you desire.

A useful application of providing initial guesses is finding multiple roots of an equation. For example, the expression  $(x - 3)(x - 2)$  has roots at  $x = 3$  and  $x = 2$ . The root that the Solver finds depends on the starting point for its search. Initial guesses tell the Solver where to begin.



### To enter guesses for the unknown variable:

1. Key in the first guess; press the menu key for the unknown variable.
2. Key in the second guess; press the menu key again.
3. Press the menu key a third time to begin solving.

**Example: Finding Multiple Roots of an Equation.** A solution for a single unknown, say  $x$ , is a root if  $f(x) = 0$ . Consider the following equation:

$$x^3 - 5x^2 - 10x = -20.$$

Rearranging terms gives

$$x^3 - 5x^2 - 10x + 20 = 0.$$

By factoring out an  $x$ , the equation is easier to write as a program.

$$x(x^2 - 5x - 10) + 20 = 0$$

Key in the following program:

```
01 LBL "FNX"   The program defines a single menu variable, X.
02 MVAR "X"
03 RCL "X"     Recalls X and makes an extra copy.
04 ENTER
05 X↑2         Calculates  $(x^2 - 5x - 10)$ .
06 LASTX
07 5
08 ×
09 -
10 10
11 -
12 ×           Calculates  $x(x^2 - 5x - 10)$  using the extra copy of
               X made in line 04.
13 20          Completes  $f(x) = x(x^2 - 5x - 10) + 20$ .
14 +
15 END
```



If you have the “DPlot” program in your calculator (page 156), you can plot  $f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 - 10x + 20$  in the display like this:

**XEQ** **DPlot**

50 **+/-** **YMIN** 25 **YMAX**

0 **AXIS**

3 **+/-** **XMIN** 7 **XMAX**

**R/S**

**FNX** **R/S**

**X**

Ready  
YMIN YMAX AXIS XMIN XMAX

YMAX=25.0000  
YMIN YMAX AXIS XMIN XMAX

AXIS=0.0000  
YMIN YMAX AXIS XMIN XMAX

XMAX=7.0000  
YMIN YMAX AXIS XMIN XMAX

ABCDE FGHI JKLM NOPQ RSTUV WXYZ

x: 3.0000  
X



By examining the plot, you can see that there are three roots (intersections with the  $x$ -axis). Use the Solver to find each root.

**SOLVER** **FNX**

x: 6.6667  
X

Since  $X$  is the only variable declared in the program, it’s the only one that appears in the Solver menu. By carefully choosing your guesses, you can zero in on each root. The graph shows that the first root is somewhere between  $x = -3$  and  $x = 0$ . Enter the first guess.

3 **+/-** **X**

X=-3.0000  
X

Enter the second guess and then solve for X.

0

X=-2.4433
<input type="text" value="x"/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/>

The first root is  $x = -2.4433$ . Now use the same procedure to find the second root, which from the graph appears to be between  $x = 0$  and  $x = 4$ .

0  4

X=1.3416
<input type="text" value="x"/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/>

The second root is  $x = 1.3416$ . Calculate the third root, which appears to be between  $x = 4$  and  $x = 7$ .

4  7

X=6.1017
<input type="text" value="x"/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/>

The third root is  $x = 6.1017$ .

---

## How the Solver Works

The Solver uses an iterative (repetitive) process to search for a solution that sets the function equal to zero. The Solver starts with two initial estimates of the answer—your guesses, or numbers it generates. Using one of the estimates, the Solver evaluates your program. Then, the Solver repeats the calculation using the other estimate. If neither estimate produces a value of zero, the Solver produces two new estimates that appear to be closer to the answer. By repeating this process many times, the Solver approaches a solution.

6.10402112301	+
6.06268001092	-

During the search for a solution, the calculator displays the two current estimates for the unknown.\* Next to each estimate, the calculator displays a sign (+ or -). Each sign indicates whether the function is positive or negative at that estimate.

\* Estimates are not displayed when a program executes the Solver.

A question mark next to an estimate indicates the function cannot be evaluated at that estimate. Generally, this is because of some mathematical error, such as dividing by zero.

## Halting and Restarting the Solver

Depending on the function you are solving, it can take several minutes to find a solution. You can halt the search by pressing **[R/S]** (or **[EXIT]**). To resume the search from where it left off, press **[R/S]** again.

If the estimates don't seem to be proceeding towards a number you judge to be a reasonable answer, halt the search (press **[R/S]**), and then enter new guesses and start over.

## Interpreting the Results

There are several possible outcomes of an iterative search for a solution. The Solver returns data to the stack registers that can be used to help you interpret the results. For a more detailed description of these conditions, refer to the *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020).

Stack Register	Contents
T	An integer (0–4) indicating the condition that caused the Solver to stop. 0 = A solution has been found. 1 = A sign reversal has occurred. 2 = An extremum has been found. 3 = Bad guess(es) were used. 4 = The function may be a constant.
Z	The value of the function evaluated at the solution. If an actual root has been found, the Z-register contains a zero.
Y	The previous guess.
X	The solution (or the best guess if a solution was not found).

**Solution Found.** A solution has been found that may be a root. If you want to know if the result is an actual root, you can:

- Test the contents of the Z-register. If this number is equal to zero, then the solution is an actual root.
- Press the menu key to solve for the unknown again. If you get the same result (without a message), the solution is an actual root. If, on the other hand, you see the message **Sign Reversal**, then the result is only an approximation to a root.

**Sign Reversal.** A discontinuity or pole has been found. The Solver has found neighboring points for which the value of the function changes sign, but no point at which it evaluates to zero.

**Extremum.** The Solver has found an approximation to a local minimum or maximum of the numerical absolute value of the function. If the solution is  $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ , it corresponds to an asymptotic extremum.

**Bad Guess(es).** If the Solver stops and displays **Bad Guess(es)**, one or both initial guesses lie outside of the domain of the function. That is, the function returns an error when evaluated at the values of the guesses.

**Constant?** If the Solver stops and displays **Constant?**, the function returns the same value at every point sampled by the Solver, suggesting that the function may be constant.

---

## Using the Solver in a Program

To use the Solver in a program, the program must:

1. Select a program using the PGMSLV (*program to solve*) function.
2. Store the known variables.
3. Provide initial guesses for the unknown (optional). The first guess is stored into the variable. The second guess is taken from the X-register.
4. Solve for the unknown with the SOLVE function.

For example, the following program segment illustrates how the "VOL" program could be solved by another program. This program multiplies the current value of  $L$  by 3 and stores that value into  $H$ . That value is then multiplied by 3 again and stored into  $V$ . The program then solves for  $W$ .

```
01 LBL "BOXSLV"
```

```
02 PGMSLV "VOL"
```

Selects "VOL" as the program to solve.

```
03 RCL "L"
```

```
04 3
```

Calculates new values for  $H$  and  $V$ .

```
05 ×
```

```
06 STO "H"
```

```
07 3
```

```
08 ×
```

```
09 STO "V"
```

```
10 SOLVE "W"
```

Solves for  $W$ .

```
11 GTO IND ST T
```

```
:
```

Branches to the subroutine specified by the code (0–4) in the T-register. That is, the program branches to LBL 00 if a solution is found, LBL 01 if a sign reversal occurred, LBL 02 if an extremum was found, LBL 03 if the guesses were bad, or LBL 04 if the function is a constant. (Refer to the table on page 187).

---

## More Solver Examples

### The Equation of Motion for Free-Fall

The equation of motion for a free-falling object is

$$Distance = v_0 t + \frac{1}{2} g t^2$$

where  $v_0$  is the initial velocity,  $t$  is the time, and  $g$  is the acceleration due to gravity. The Solver enables you to solve for any of the variables, given values for the other variables.

Rearranging terms gives

$$0 = v_0 t + \frac{1}{2} g t^2 - Distance.$$

Written as a program for the Solver, the equation looks like this:

01 LBL "FREE"	Defines the menu variables for the program.
02 MVAR "Dist"	
03 MVAR "Vo"	
04 MVAR "Time"	
05 MVAR "g"	
06 RCL "Vo"	Calculates $v_0 t$ .
07 RCL "Time"	
08 ×	
09 LASTX	Calculates $\frac{1}{2} g t^2$ .
10 X+2	
11 RCL× "g"	
12 2	
13 ÷	
14 +	Adds the two intermediate results: $v_0 t + \frac{1}{2} g t^2$ .
15 RCL- "Dist"	Subtracts the distance, which completes $f(x)$ .
16 END	



Since the acceleration due to gravity,  $g$ , is a menu variable, you can change it to match the units of the problem you're working. It also allows you to calculate  $g$  based on experimental data.

**Example.** Calculate how far an object falls in 5 seconds (starting from rest). Before you begin, go to a new program space and key in the program listed above.

**SOLVER** **FREE**

x: 0.0000  
DIST VO TIME G

The object is starting at rest, so  $v_o = 0$ .

0 **VO**

Vo=0.0000  
DIST VO TIME G

Store the appropriate acceleration constant. To get a final result in meters, use  $9.8 \text{ m/s}^2$ .

9.8 **G**

g=9.8000  
DIST VO TIME G

Store the time (5 seconds).

5 **TIME**

Time=5.0000  
DIST VO TIME G

Now solve for the distance.

**DIST**

Dist=122.5000  
DIST VO TIME G

An object falls 122.5 meters in 5 seconds.

Try another calculation: how long does it take an object to fall 500 meters? Since  $v_o$  and  $g$  are already stored, there's no need to store them again. Store the distance.

500 **DIST**

Dist=500.0000  
DIST VO TIME G

Calculate the time.

**TIME**

Time=10.1015  
DIST VO TIME G

It takes slightly more than 10 seconds for an object to fall 500 meters.



## The Time Value of Money Equation

The time value of money equation

$$0 = PV + (1 + ip) PMT \left[ \frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-N}}{i} \right] + FV (1 + i)^{-N}$$

establishes the relationships between the following variables:

<i>N</i>	The number of monthly payments or compounding periods.
<i>I%YR</i>	The annual interest rate as a fraction ( $i = I\%YR \div 1200$ ).
<i>PV</i>	The present value. (This can also be an initial cash flow or a discounted value of a series of future cash flows.) <i>PV</i> always occurs at the beginning of the first month.
<i>PMT</i>	The monthly payment.
<i>FV</i>	The future value. (This can also be a final cash flow or a compounded value of a series of cash flows.) <i>FV</i> always occurs at the end of the <i>N</i> th month.

The value *p* indicates payment timing. If  $p = 1$ , then payments occur at the *beginning* of each month. If  $p = 0$ , then payments occur at the *end* of each month. The "TVM" program uses flag 00 to represent *p*. For payments at the beginning a each month, set flag 00. For payments at the end of each month, clear flag 00.

Here is how the equation can be written as a program for the Solver:

01 LBL "TVM"	Declares the menu variables.
02 MVAR "N"	
03 MVAR "I%YR"	
04 MVAR "PV"	
05 MVAR "PMT"	
06 MVAR "FV"	
07 1	Calculates the monthly interest
08 ENTER	rate expressed as a decimal frac-
09 ENTER	tion, $i$ .
10 RCL "I%YR"	
11 %	
12 12	
13 ÷	
14 STO ST T	
15 FC? 00	If flag 00 is clear (End mode), cal-
16 CLX	culates $(i + 0)$ . If flag 00 is set
17 +	(Begin mode), calculates $(i + 1)$ .
18 R+	Calculates $(1 + i)^{-N}$ .
19 +	
20 RCL "N"	
21 +/-	
22 Y $\leftrightarrow$ X	
23 1	Calculates $1 - (1 + i)^{-N}$ .
24 X $\leftrightarrow$ Y	
25 -	
26 LASTX	Calculates $FV (1 + i)^{-N}$ .
27 RCL $\times$ "FV"	
28 R+	
29 X $\leftrightarrow$ Y	Calculates $1 - \frac{(1 + i)^{-N}}{i}$ .
30 ÷	
31 $\times$	Completes the expression.
32 RCL $\times$ "PMT"	
33 +	
34 RCL+ "PV"	
35 END	

**Example.** Penny of Penny's Accounting wants to know what the monthly payments will be for a 3-year loan at 10.5% annual interest, compounded monthly. The amount financed is \$5,750. Payments are made at the end of each period.

After keying in the program above, use the Solver to calculate the unknown information for Penny.

**SOLVER** **TVM**

X: 0.0000					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

Clear flag 00 and set the display format to FIX 2.

**FLAGS** **CF** 00  
**DISP** **FIX** 02

X: 0.00					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

Enter the known values:  $PV = 5750$ ,  $FV = 0$ ,  $I\%YR = 10.5$ , and  $N = 3 \times 12$ .

5750 **PV**

PV=5,750.00					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

0 **FV**

FV=0.00					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

10.5 **I%YR**

I%YR=10.50					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

3 **ENTER** 12 **x** **N**

N=36.00					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

Now solve for the payment.

**PMT**

PMT=-186.89					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

The payment is negative because it is money to be *paid out*.

This is \$10 higher than Penny's client can pay each month. What interest rate would reduce the monthly payments by \$10? Add 10 to the negative payment that's already in the X-register and store the new value into **PMT**.

10 **+** **PMT**

PMT=-176.89					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

Now, solve for the interest rate.

**I%YR**

I%YR=6.75					
N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV	

Return to FIX 4 display mode and exit from the Solver.

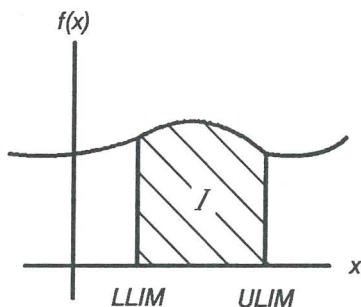
**DISP** **FIX** 04 **EXIT** **EXIT**

Y: 6.7509					
X: 6.7509					


## Numerical Integration

Many problems in mathematics, science, and engineering require calculating the definite integral of a function. If the function is denoted by  $f(x)$  and the interval of integration is from the lower limit (LLIM) to the upper limit (ULIM), then the integral can be expressed mathematically as

$$I = \int_{LLIM}^{ULIM} f(x) dx.$$






The quantity  $I$  can be interpreted geometrically as the area of a region bounded by the graph of  $f(x)$ , the  $x$ -axis, and the limits  $x = LLIM$  and  $x = ULIM$  (provided that  $f(x)$  is nonnegative throughout the interval of integration).

In this chapter, you'll learn how to use the HP-42S Integration application (  $\int f(x)$ ) to calculate a definite integral.

---

## Using Integration

The general procedure for calculating an integral is:

1. Enter a program that defines the function  $f(x)$  that you want to integrate.
2. Press   and then select the program you want to integrate.
3. For each constant used in  $f(x)$ , key in a value and then store the value by pressing the corresponding menu key.
4. Select a variable of integration by pressing the corresponding menu key.
5. Enter the limits of integration and an accuracy factor, and then press  to calculate the integral.

### Step 1: Writing a Program for Integration

Before you can calculate the definite integral of  $f(x)$ , you must write a program that evaluates  $f(x)$  given  $x$ . While writing the program, keep in mind:

- The program must begin with a global label.
- The program must define all variables you want to appear in the Integration variable menu.
- The Integration application may execute your program many times to find a solution. Therefore, the length and efficiency of your program affects the amount of time it takes to calculate the integral.

**How an Integral Is Calculated.** The HP-42S evaluates an integral by computing a weighted average of the function's values at many values of the variable of integration within the interval of integration. These are known as sample points.

The integration algorithm at first considers only a few sample points, yielding relatively inaccurate approximations. If these approximations are not yet as accurate as the accuracy of  $f(x)$  would permit, the algorithm is iterated (repeated) with a larger number of sample points. These iterations continue, using about twice as many sample points each time, until the resulting approximation is accurate as specified by the accuracy factor.

Depending on the number of iterations needed, it may take a few seconds to several minutes to calculate a result.

**Defining Menu Variables.** MVAR (*menu variable*) instructions define which variables appear in the Integration variable menu. These definitions must be grouped together (sequential line numbers) and must immediately follow the global label. The Integration application ignores MVAR instructions that occur anywhere else in the program.

Your program may use any number of variables; however, only those defined with MVAR appear in the Integration variable menu.

**Example: Keying in a Program for Integration.** The Bessel function of the first kind of order 0 can be expressed as

$$J_0(x) = 1/\pi \int_0^\pi \cos(x \sin t) dt.$$

Written as a program, this function looks like this:

01 LBL "BSSL"	Declares the menu variables.
02 MVAR "X"	
03 MVAR "T"	
04 RCL "T"	Calculates $f(x) = \cos(x \sin t)$ .
05 SIN	
06 RCL× "X"	
07 COS	
08 END	

Create the variables and then key the program into the calculator.


0 [STO] [ENTER] T [ENTER]  
 [STO] [ENTER] X [ENTER]  
 [GTO] [.] [.]  
 [PRGM]  
 [PGM.FCN] LBL BSSL [ENTER]

Y: 0.0000  
 X: 0.0000

00 { 0-Byte Prgm }  
 01 .END.

00 { 8-Byte Prgm }  
 01 LBL "BSSL"



  $\int f(x)$  MVAR X

MVAR T EXIT

RCL T

SIN

RCL  $\times$  X

COS

02 MVAR "X"			
MVAR			PINT INTEG

02 MVAR "X"			
03 MVAR "T"			

03 MVAR "T"			
04 RCL "T"			




04 RCL "T"			
05 SIN			

05 SIN			
06 RCL $\times$ "X"			

06 RCL $\times$ "X"			
07 COS			

Press **EXIT** to exit Program-entry mode.

## Step 2: Selecting a Program To Integrate

When you select the Integration application (  $\int f(x)$ ), it prompts you to select a program. All global labels that are followed by MVAR instructions are displayed in a menu. Select a program by pressing the corresponding menu key. (If there are more than six labels, use  or  to find the program you're looking for.)

**Example.** Select the "BSSL" program entered in the previous example. The Integration application immediately displays the variable menu for "BSSL".

  $\int f(x)$  BSSL

Set Vars; Select fvar					
"	T				

### Step 3: Storing the Constants

The Integration application displays a variable menu for the function you selected. Use it to store each constant in the function:

1. Key in the constant value.
2. Press the corresponding menu key.

To view the contents of a variable without recalling it, press the shift key (■) and then hold down the corresponding menu key. The message disappears when you release the key.

**Example.** For the first evaluation of the Bessel integral, the constant  $X$  is 2.

2 

X=2.0000				
X	T			

### Step 4: Selecting a Variable of Integration

After storing the constants, press the menu key for the variable of integration. Do not key in a number (or alter the  $X$ -register in any way) before you press the key. If you do, the calculator assumes you are storing another constant. Press the key again. If the calculator displays a menu with the variables  $LLIM$ ,  $ULIM$ , and  $ACC$ , then you have successfully selected a variable of integration. If you select the wrong variable, press **EXIT** and try again.

**Example.** Select  $T$  as the variable of integration for the Bessel function.



X: 2.0000				
LLIM	ULIM	ACC		

### Step 5: Setting the Limits and Calculating the Integral

The menu displayed in the example above is used to store the limits of integration and an accuracy factor.

**Lower Limit (LLIM).** The *LLIM* variable specifies the left end of the  $x$ -range for the integral. To store a new value into *LLIM*, key in the value and then press **LLIM**.

**Upper Limit (ULIM).** The *ULIM* variable specifies the right end of the  $x$ -range for the integral. To store a new value into *ULIM*, key in the value and then press **ULIM**.

**Accuracy Factor (ACC).** The *ACC* variable specifies the accuracy factor to be used during the integration. The smaller the accuracy factor, the more accurate the integral calculation (which also increases execution time). To store a new value into *ACC*, key in the value and then press **ACC**.

**Calculating the Integral.** To calculate the integral, press  **$\int$** . You can stop the calculation of the integral at any time by pressing **R/S** (or **EXIT**). To resume the calculation, press **R/S** again.

**Example.** Store the limits of integration to integrate the Bessel function from 0 to  $\pi$  radians.

**MODES** **RAD**

x: 2.0000				
LLIM	ULIM	ACC		$\int$

0 **LLIM**

LLIM=0.0000				
LLIM	ULIM	ACC		$\int$

**$\pi$**  **ULIM**

ULIM=3.1416				
LLIM	ULIM	ACC		$\int$

Store an accuracy factor.

.01 **ACC**

ACC=0.0100				
LLIM	ULIM	ACC		$\int$

Now calculate the integral.

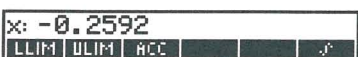
**$\int$**

$\int$ =0.7043				
LLIM	ULIM	ACC		$\int$

Divide the result by  $\pi$  (the constant outside the integral).



Now change the constant,  $X$ , to 3 and calculate the integral again.



Exit from the Integration application.



The value of the integral is in the  $X$ -register, and the *uncertainty of computation* (described below) is in the  $Y$ -register.

## Accuracy of Integration

Since the calculator cannot compute the value of an integral exactly, it *approximates* it. The accuracy of this approximation depends on the accuracy of the integrand's function itself as calculated by your program.\* This is affected by round-off error in the calculator and the accuracy of the empirical constants.

**The Accuracy Factor.** The accuracy factor (ACC) is a real number that specifies the relative error tolerance of the integration. The accuracy determines the spacing of the points, in the domain of the integration variable, at which the integrand is sampled for the approximation of the integral.

\* While integrals of functions with certain characteristics such as spikes or rapid oscillations might be calculated inaccurately, these functions are rare.

The accuracy is specified as a fractional error, that is

$$ACC \geq \left| \frac{(\text{true value} - \text{computed value})}{\text{computed value}} \right|$$

where *value* is the value of the integrand at any point in the integration interval. Even if your integrand is accurate to 12 significant digits, you may wish to use a larger accuracy factor to reduce integration time since the larger the accuracy factor, the fewer points that must be sampled.

**Uncertainty of Computation.** When an integral is calculated, the approximation of the integral is returned to the X-register and the *uncertainty of computation* is returned to the Y-register. That is, the integral is approximated to a value of  $x, \pm y$ .

For example, the uncertainty of computation returned in the example above is 0.0219. Dividing by  $\pi$  gives 0.0070. That means the approximation of the integral is  $-0.2592 \pm 0.0070$ .

---

## Using Integration in a Program

To calculate an integral in a running program, the program must:

1. Select a program using the PGMINT (*program to integrate*) function.
2. Store the constants (using  $\boxed{\text{STO}}$ ).
3. Store the limits of integration and an accuracy factor.
4. Calculate the integral with the INTEG (*integrate*) function.

For example, the following program segment illustrates how these functions can be used to calculate an integral. In this example, the Bessel function is calculated again—this time using an  $x$ -value of 4.

<pre>       :       :       : 73 PGMINT "BSSL"  74 CLX 75 STO "LLIM" 76 PI 77 STO "ULIM" 78 0.01 79 STO "ACC" 80 4 81 STO "X" 82 INTEG "T"  83 PI 84 ÷       :       :       : </pre>	<p>Selects the Bessel function program to be integrated. (Refer to the example on page 198.)</p> <p>Stores the limits of integration, accuracy factor, and the constant <math>X</math>.</p> <p>Calculates the integral with respect to the variable <math>T</math>. The result is returned to the X-register and the uncertainty is returned to the Y-register.</p> <p>Divides by the constant outside the integral (<math>\pi</math>).</p>
---	---

The program could go on to interpret or display the results using the approximation of the integral in the X-register and the uncertainty in the Y-register.

## Matrix Operations

---

A matrix is a rectangular array of numbers. In general, a matrix of order  $m \times n$  has the following form:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}.$$

In this chapter you will learn how to:

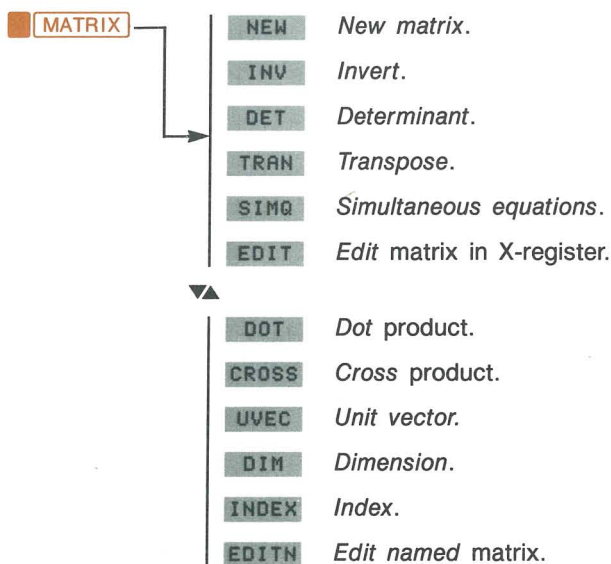
- Create and fill a matrix.
- Do matrix arithmetic and use the built-in matrix functions.
- Solve a system of simultaneous linear equations.
- Manipulate the contents of a matrix by indexing it and then using the matrix utility functions.

---

## Matrices in the HP-42S

Matrices are one of the four data types used by the HP-42S. As such, a matrix can be manipulated in the calculator just like any other data. The first two rows of the MATRIX menu contain many of the functions needed for working with matrices.





## Creating and Filling a Matrix in the X-Register

### To create a matrix in the X-register:

1. Key in the dimensions of the matrix: rows ENTER columns. (The maximum size of a matrix is limited only by the amount of memory available.)
2. Press MATRIX NEW (new matrix).

### To fill a matrix with data:

1. Press EDIT to activate the *Matrix Editor* on the matrix in the X-register.
2. Use ←, ↑, ↓, and → to move to the element you want to enter, and then key in the number. Repeat this step for each element of the matrix. (The Matrix Editor is explained in more detail on page 211.)
3. Press EXIT to exit the Matrix Editor and return the edited matrix to the X-register.

**Example.** Create the following matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 7 & -5 \\ 4 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$$

2 **ENTER**

Y: 2.0000  
X: 2.0000

**MATRIX** **NEW**

x: [ 2x2 Matrix ]  
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

**EDIT**

1:1=0.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Fill the matrix rowwise. That is, start with the upper-left element and move left to right across each row.

7

1:1=7\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 5 **+/-**

1:2=-5\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 4

2:1=4\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 9

2:2=9\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Exit from the Editor to return the matrix to the X-register.

**EXIT**

x: [ 2x2 Matrix ]  
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

Pressing the **SHOW** key when there is a matrix in the X-register displays the matrix descriptor and the first element.

**SHOW** (hold down)

[ 2x2 Matrix ]  
1:1=7

Store a copy of the matrix into the variable *MAT1* (refer to the note below).

**[STO]** **[ENTER]** MAT1 **[ENTER]**

x: [ 2x2 Matrix ]  
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

Exit from the MATRIX menu.

**[EXIT]**

y: 0.0000  
x: [ 2x2 Matrix ]



### Note

Because matrices can be used to hold large amounts of data, it's recommended that you store copies of matrices (and other important data) into variables and then recall the data as it's needed. This saves you the trouble of keying the data in again if you inadvertently lose the matrix off the top of the stack during other calculations or while editing another matrix.

## Creating and Filling a Named Matrix





A named matrix (that is, a matrix stored in a variable) can be created and filled directly in the variable. That is, you don't have to create the matrix in the stack and then store it.

### To create a named matrix:

1. Key in the dimensions of the matrix: rows **[ENTER]** columns.
2. Press **[MATRIX]** **[V]** **[DIM]**.
3. Type the variable name for the new matrix: **[ENTER]** name **[ENTER]**.  
(If the variable already exists, the calculator redimensions it as the matrix you've specified.)

### To edit a named matrix (without recalling it to the stack):

1. Press **[EDITN]** (edit named matrix).
2. Press a menu key to select the matrix you want to edit.

3. Use , , , and  to move to the element you want to enter, and then key in the number. Repeat this step for each element of the matrix.

4. Press  to exit the Matrix Editor.

**Example.** Create a variable named *MAT2* and fill it with the following data:



$$\begin{bmatrix} -5 & 10 & 14 \\ 17 & 5 & -11 \end{bmatrix}$$

Display the second row of the MATRIX menu.

x: [ 2x2 Matrix ]  
     







Create the matrix.

2  3   MAT2  








x: 3.0000  
     

Fill *MAT2* using the Matrix Editor.







 *MAT2*

1:1=0.0000  
     







5 

1:1=-5\_  
     







 10

1:2=10\_  
     







 14

1:3=14\_  
     

 17

2:1=17\_  
     

 5

2:2=5\_  
     

→ 11  $\frac{+}{-}$

2:3=-11\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

EXIT

x: -11.0000  
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

Recall *MAT1* and *MAT2* and multiply them together.

RCL MAT1

x: [ 2x2 Matrix ]  
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

RCL MAT2

x: [ 2x3 Matrix ]  
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

x

x: [ 2x3 Matrix ]  
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

Use the Editor to view the resulting matrix.

▲ EDIT

1:1=-120.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→

1:2=45.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→

1:3=153.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→

2:1=133.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→

2:2=85.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→

2:3=-43.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Thus,  $MAT1 \times MAT2$  is:

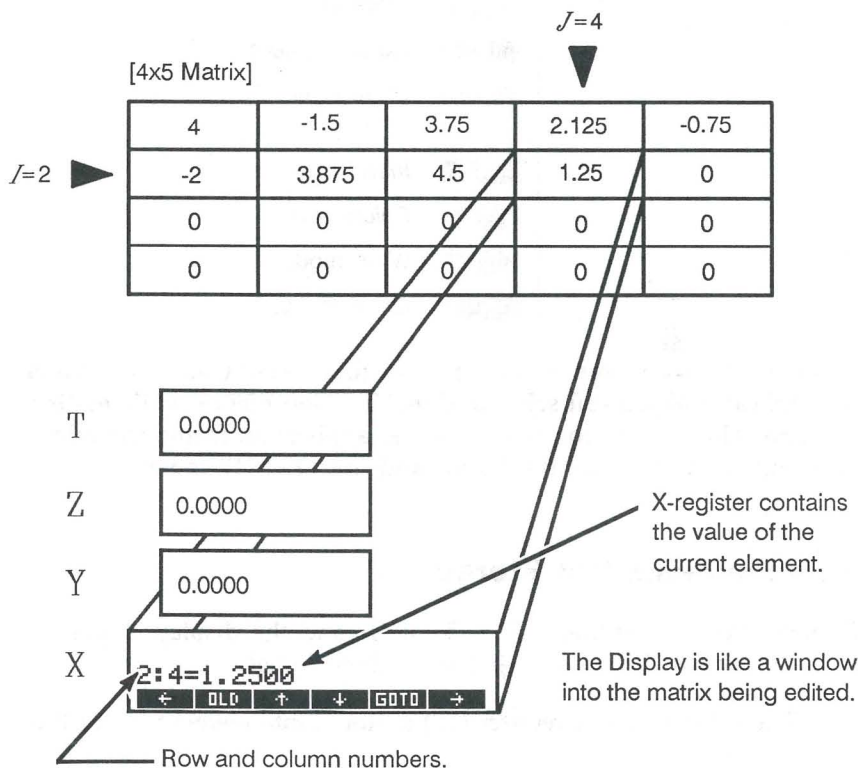
$$\begin{bmatrix} -120 & 45 & 153 \\ 133 & 85 & -43 \end{bmatrix}$$

EXIT EXIT

y: -11.0000  
x: [ 2x3 Matrix ]

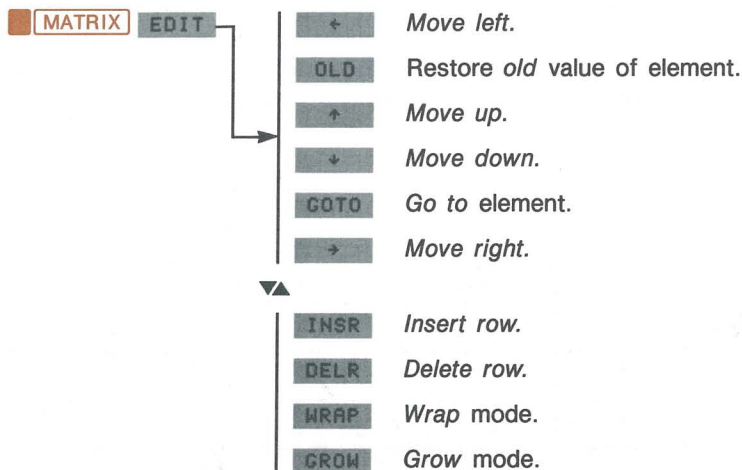
## The Matrix Editor

The Matrix Editor enables you to enter, view, and change any element in a matrix. When you activate the Editor, it recalls the contents of the first element into the X-register. As you move around in the matrix, the display shows the element number and its contents. To change an element, simply key in or calculate the new value.





The calculator's stack is a companion to the Matrix Editor. As you move from element to element, the stack moves right along with you, which means you can do calculations at any time.



Since the Matrix Editor menu is part of the MATRIX menu (which is an application), you can select and use function menus while editing a matrix. However, if you select another application menu, the calculator automatically exits the Editor and the MATRIX menu.

## How Elements Get Stored

Suppose you are editing a  $5 \times 5$  matrix and the display shows  $2:3=17.0000$ . Pressing **→** does three things:

1. The value in the X-register (17) is stored into element 2:3 of the matrix.
2. The pointers are advanced to the next element (2:4).
3. The contents of element 2:4 are recalled to the X-register, *overwriting* the previous value (17).

This scheme allows you to use the Editor to view each element in a matrix without altering the data in the Y-, Z-, and T-registers.



The Editor allows you to recall any type of data into the X-register and do calculations. However, before you move to another element or exit from the Editor, *the X-register must contain data that can be stored into the matrix element*. A matrix cannot contain another matrix, a real matrix cannot contain a complex number, and a complex matrix cannot contain an Alpha string.

If the Matrix Editor displays **Invalid Type** when you press **EXIT**, the value in the X-register is not a valid element for the current matrix.

## Matrices That Automatically Grow

In some circumstances you may want to create a matrix without knowing how big to make it. In *Grow* mode, the Matrix Editor allows you to keep adding rows to a matrix, regardless of its initial dimensions. Three things must happen for a matrix to automatically grow:

- Grow mode must be active. (Press **GROW** in the second row of the Matrix Editor menu.)
- The Editor must be positioned to the last (lower-right) element in the matrix.
- Press **→** to create the new row and move to the first element in that row. Each of the new elements is filled with a zero.

The example on page 241 shows how data can be entered into a matrix using Grow mode. To return to Wrap mode (default), press **WRAP**. The calculator automatically returns to Wrap mode when you enter or exit from the Matrix Editor.

## Restoring the Old Value

Pressing **OLD** recalls the contents of the current element into the X-register. This is useful when you lose track of a calculation or change an element by mistake. You can also recall the current element by executing the **RCLEL** (*recall element*) function.

The “old” value is the number that was in the element when you first moved there. It is not replaced until you move to another element or exit from the Editor.

## Inserting and Deleting Rows

While editing a matrix, you can insert and delete rows using functions in the second row of the Matrix Editor menu.

### To insert a row into a matrix:

1. Move to any element in the row that will follow the new row.
2. Press **INSR** (*insert row*).

### To delete a row of a matrix:

1. Move to any element in the row you want to delete.
2. Press **DELR** (*delete row*). You cannot use the DELR function if the matrix has only one row.

---

## Complex Matrices

Before you can enter complex numbers into a matrix, the entire matrix must be made complex.

## Creating Complex Matrices

### To create a new complex matrix:

1. Create a real matrix using the procedure on page 206.
2. Before you enter any data into the matrix, press **ENTER** to make a copy of the matrix.
3. Press **COMPLEX** to combine the two real matrices into a complex matrix. (For more information on the COMPLEX function, refer to page 91.)

**Example.** Create a new  $3 \times 4$  complex matrix.

3 **ENTER** 4

Y: 3.0000
X: 4_

**MATRIX** **NEW**

X: [ 3x4 Matrix ]					
NEW	INV	DET	TRAM	SIMQ	EDIT

**ENTER** **COMPLEX**

x: [ 3x4 Cpx Matrix ]  
NEW INV DET TRAN DIM EDIT

**EXIT**

## To convert an existing matrix to complex:

### 1. Key in one of the following complex numbers:

- 1 **ENTER** 0 **COMPLEX** if you want the existing numbers in the matrix to become the real parts of the complex numbers.
- 0 **ENTER** 1 **COMPLEX** if you want the existing numbers in the matrix to become the imaginary parts of the complex numbers. (The calculator must be in Rectangular mode to enter this complex number.)
- 0 **ENTER** **COMPLEX** if you don't want to save any of the data in the existing matrix.

### 2. Multiply the matrix by the complex number.

For example, to convert *MAT1* (created in the example on page 207) to complex (saving the current data as real parts), press 1 **ENTER** 0

**COMPLEX** **STO** **x** **MAT1**.

## Converting a Complex Matrix to Real

Pressing **COMPLEX** converts the complex matrix in the X-register into two real matrices. The matrix containing the left-hand parts ( $x$ - or  $r$ -values) is left in the Y-register; the matrix containing the right-hand parts ( $y$ - or  $\theta$ -values) is left in the X-register.

## Filling a Complex Matrix

The Matrix Editor works with complex matrices just as it does for real matrices. When you're filling a matrix with data, key in complex numbers as described in chapter 6. If a number has a zero imaginary part, you can leave it off. (The calculator automatically converts the number to complex when it is stored into the matrix.)

**Example.** Calculate the determinant ( **DET** ) of the following complex matrix.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 10 + i16 & 4 + i9 \\ -4 & i17 \end{bmatrix}$$

Create a  $2 \times 2$  real matrix.

**MATRIX** 2 **ENTER** **NEW**

x: [ 2x2 Matrix ]  
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

Make the matrix complex.

**ENTER** **COMPLEX**

x: [ 2x2 Cpx Matrix ]  
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

Now edit the matrix. (Be sure your calculator is in Rectangular mode by pressing **MODE** **RECT**.)

**EDIT** 10 **ENTER** 16 **COMPLEX**

1:1=10.0000 i16.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

**→** 4 **ENTER** 9 **COMPLEX**

1:2=4.0000 i9.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

**→** 4 **+/-**

2:1=-4\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

**→** 0 **ENTER** 17 **COMPLEX**

2:2=0.0000 i17.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

**EXIT**

x: [ 2x2 Cpx Matrix ]  
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

**DET**

x: -256.0000 i206.0000  
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

**EXIT**

## Redimensioning a Matrix

### To redimension a named matrix:

1. Enter the new dimensions: *rows*  *columns*.
2. Press  . The calculator displays a variable catalog of existing matrices.
3. Select a matrix by pressing the corresponding menu key or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu.

If the matrix does not exist, it is created using the dimensions and variable name that you've specified.

**What Happens When a Matrix Is Redimensioned.** Matrices are stored internally as a single sequence of elements. The elements fill the matrix *rowwise*.

When you redimension a matrix, the rowwise order of the elements is not changed. If you increase the size of the matrix, new elements are added at the end of the sequence. Similarly, if you reduce the number of elements in a matrix, the last elements (and the data stored in those elements) are lost.

[ 2×5 Matrix ] redimensioned to [ 4×3 Matrix ]

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 10 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

You can recall the current dimensions of a matrix by recalling it into the X-register and then executing the DIM? (*dimensions?*) function. DIM? returns the number of rows to the Y-register, number of columns to the X-register, and saves a copy of the matrix in the LAST X register.



## Matrix Arithmetic

Calculating with matrices is like calculating with numbers. You can manipulate a matrix on the stack using the same techniques you've already learned for working with numbers (chapter 2).

**Scalar Arithmetic.** Scalar arithmetic is defined as a matrix and a single number (the scalar) being combined with an arithmetic operation ( $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ , or  $\div$ ). The arithmetic takes place on each element in the matrix.

**Example: Scalar Arithmetic in the Stack.** Recall the matrix *MAT1* (created in the first example in this chapter) and multiply it by 3.5. (Every element in *MAT1* is multiplied by 3.5.)

<code>RCL</code> <code>MAT1</code>	<div>Y: -256.0000 i206.0000 X: [ 2x2 Matrix ]</div>
3.5	<div>Y: [ 2x2 Matrix ] X: 3.5_</div>
<code>[<math>\times</math>]</code>	<div>Y: -256.0000 i206.0000 X: [ 2x2 Matrix ]</div>

### Example: Scalar Arithmetic Combined With Variable

**Arithmetic.** You can also use storage arithmetic to perform scalar arithmetic on a named matrix. Subtract 3 from each element in the matrix *MAT2*.

3 <code>[STO]</code> <code>[<math>-</math>]</code> <code>MAT2</code>	<div>Y: [ 2x2 Matrix ] X: 3.0000</div>
--	--



**Matrix Arithmetic Using One-Number Functions.** Nearly all the one-number functions work on a matrix. For example, if you press `[ $x^2$ ]` when there is a matrix in the X-register, each element in the matrix is squared. To make a matrix negative (change the sign of each element), press `[ $\pm$ ]`.



**Matrix Arithmetic Using Two-Number Functions.** You can add, subtract, multiply, and divide matrices using `[ $+$ ]`, `[ $-$ ]`, `[ $\times$ ]`, and `[ $\div$ ]`. If either matrix is complex, the result is also complex.



Function	Inputs	Result
Addition (+) or Subtraction (-)	Y: [m×n Matrix] X: [m×n Matrix]	X: [m×n Matrix]
Multiplication (×)	Y: [m×n Matrix] X: [n×p Matrix]	X: [m×p Matrix]
Division (÷)*	Y: [m×n Matrix] X: [m×m Matrix]	X: [m×n Matrix]

\* Matrix division is defined as multiplying the numerator by the inverse of the denominator. Therefore, the X-register must contain a nonsingular (invertible) matrix.

## Matrix Functions

**Inverting a Matrix.** Execute the INVRT function (  **MATRIX**  ) to calculate the inverse of a square ( $n \times n$ ) matrix in the X-register. A matrix multiplied by its inverse produces the *identity matrix* (a square matrix with 1's on the diagonal and 0's elsewhere).

**Transposing a Matrix.** Execute the TRANS function (  **MATRIX**  ) to transpose a matrix in the X-register. The *transpose* of a matrix is obtained by *flipping* the matrix so that the rows become columns and the columns become rows.

**Determinant.** Execute the DET function (  **MATRIX**  ) to calculate the determinant of a square matrix in the X-register.

**Frobenius Norm.** Execute the FNRM (*Frobenius norm*) function to calculate the Frobenius (Euclidean) norm of a matrix in the X-register. The Frobenius norm is defined as the square root of the sum of the squares of the absolute values of all of the elements.



**Row Norm.** Execute the RNRN (*row norm*) function to calculate the row norm (infinity norm) of a matrix in the X-register. The row norm is the maximum value (over all rows) of the sums of the absolute values of all elements in a row. For a vector, the row norm is the largest absolute value of any of the elements.







**Row Sum.** Execute the RSUM (*row sum*) function to calculate the sum of each row of a matrix in the X-register. RSUM returns an  $m \times 1$  matrix filled with the row sums of the  $m \times n$  input matrix.

## Vector Operations

A single-row or single-column matrix is called a *vector*. The HP-42S performs the following vector operations.

**Dot Product.** Execute the DOT function (  **MATRIX**  **DOT** ) to calculate the dot product of the matrices in the X- and Y-registers. The dot product is defined as the sum of the products of the corresponding elements in two matrices.

**Cross Product.** Execute the CROSS function (  **MATRIX**  **CROSS** ) to calculate the cross product of the vectors in the X- and Y-registers. The two vectors must be two- or three-element matrices or complex numbers.

**Unit Vector.** Execute the UVEC function (  **MATRIX**  **UVEC** ) to calculate the unit vector of the matrix in the X-register. That is, each element in the vector is adjusted so that the magnitude (Frobenius norm) is equal to 1.

## Simultaneous Linear Equations

A system of linear equations

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 = b_1$$






$$a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 = b_2$$


can be represented by the matrix equation  $AX = B$ , where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad X = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

$A$  is the *coefficient matrix*,  $B$  is the *constant* or *column matrix*, and  $X$  is the *solution matrix*.

### To solve a system of simultaneous equations:

1. Specify the number of unknowns: Press   *nn*. The calculator automatically creates (if necessary) and dimensions three matrices: *MATA*, *MATB*, and *MATX*.
2. Enter the coefficient matrix: press .
3. Enter the constant matrix: press .
4. Calculate the solution matrix: press . (For a large system of equations, this calculation can take several seconds to complete.)

To work another problem with the same number of unknowns, go to step 2 or 3. For a problem with a different number of unknowns, press  and start over with step 1.

**Example.** Find the three unknowns in this system of simultaneous equations:

$$\begin{aligned} 7x + 2y - z &= 15 \\ x - y + 15z &= 112 \\ -9x + 2z &= -22 \end{aligned}$$

The coefficient matrix is:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 7 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 15 \\ -9 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Create the appropriate matrices for three equations and three unknowns.

  03

x: 3.0000			
MATA	MATB	MATX	

Fill in the coefficient matrix.

**MATA**

7  $\rightarrow$  2  $\rightarrow$  1  $\boxed{+/-}$

$\rightarrow$  1  $\rightarrow$  1  $\boxed{+/-}$   $\rightarrow$  15

$\rightarrow$  9  $\boxed{+/-}$   $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  2

**EXIT**

Fill the constant matrix.

**MATB**

15  $\rightarrow$  112  $\rightarrow$  22  $\boxed{+/-}$

**EXIT**

Calculate and view the solution matrix.

**MATX**

The first unknown,  $x$ , is 4.

$\rightarrow$

1:1=0.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

1:3=-1\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

2:3=15\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

3:3=2\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

x: 2.0000  
MATA MATE MATX

1:1=0.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

3:1=-22\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

x: -22.0000  
MATA MATE MATX

1:1=4.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

2:1=-3.0000  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

The second unknown,  $y$ , is  $-3$ .



And the third unknown,  $z$ , is  $7$ .



## Matrix Utility Functions (Indexing)

The functions in this section work on the currently *indexed* matrix. By indexing a matrix you can directly access and manipulate any element in a named matrix.

### To index a matrix:

1. Press .
2. Specify a named matrix by pressing the corresponding menu key or typing the variable name with the ALPHA menu.

You can also index a matrix by editing it. After exiting the Matrix Editor, the matrix is no longer indexed.

## Controlling the Index Pointers

Indexing a matrix establishes row and column pointers ( $I$  and  $J$ ). These are the same pointers used by the Matrix Editor to identify the current element. When you index a matrix, the pointers are set to the first element. That is,  $I = 1$  and  $J = 1$ . (Note that any operation that changes the dimensions of the indexed matrix also returns the index pointers to element 1:1.)

You can increment or decrement either pointer using the first four functions in the following table. If you attempt to move a pointer past the edge of a matrix (that is, outside its dimensions), the pointers automatically wrap around to the first element in the next column or row (or last element in the previous column or row).

To set the index pointers to a particular element, enter the pointer values into the X- and Y-registers (column and row, respectively), and then execute the STOIJ (*store IJ*) function.

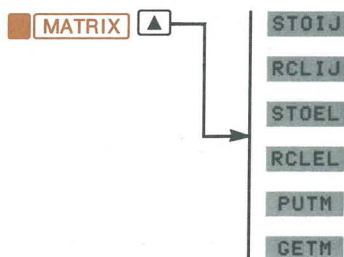
To recall the current pointer values to the X- and Y-registers, execute the RCLIJ (*recall IJ*) function.

### Functions for Controlling the Index Pointers

Function	Description
I+	Increments the row pointer by one (down).*
I-	Decrements the row pointer by one (up).*
J+	Increments the column pointer by one (right).* If the calculator is in Grow mode, and the pointers are at the last element in the matrix, executing J+ creates a new row at the end of the matrix.
J-	Decrements the column pointer by one (left).*
STOIJ	Sets the index pointers to the numbers specified in the X- and Y-registers ( $x$ = column number; $y$ = row number).
RCLIJ	Recalls the current values of the index pointers to the X- and Y-registers ( $x$ = column number; $y$ = row number). If the pointers are both equal to zero, then there is currently no indexed matrix.

\* Flags 76 and 77 are updated accordingly, indicating if a wrap has occurred. Refer to appendix C.

The third row of the MATRIX menu contains six of the most often used indexing functions.





# Storing and Recalling Matrix Elements

The STOEL (*store element*) and RCLEL (*recall element*) functions are used to store and recall values in the indexed matrix. These functions do not alter the index pointers.

Function	Description
STOEL	Stores a copy of the value in the X-register into the indexed matrix at the current element, $a_{ij}$ .
RCLEL	Recalls a copy of the current element, $a_{ij}$ , into the X-register.

# Programmable Matrix Editor Functions

Functions in the Matrix Editor menu (except **GOTO**) are programmable and work on the indexed matrix just as they do while using the Editor manually. For example, if you execute  $\leftarrow$  (*move left*),  $\uparrow$  (*move up*),  $\downarrow$  (*move down*), or  $\rightarrow$  (*move right*), then:

1. The value in the X-register is stored into the indexed matrix at the current element.
2. The row and column pointers ( $I$  and  $J$ ) are advanced to the next element—left, up, down, or right. (If the calculator is in Grow mode and the function is  $\rightarrow$ , the matrix is enlarged by one complete row and the pointers are advanced to the first element in the new row.)
3. The value stored in the current element is recalled to the X-register, overwriting the previous value in the X-register.



The INSR, DELR, WRAP, and GROW functions (in the second row of the Editor menu) are also programmable. Refer to pages 212 through 214.

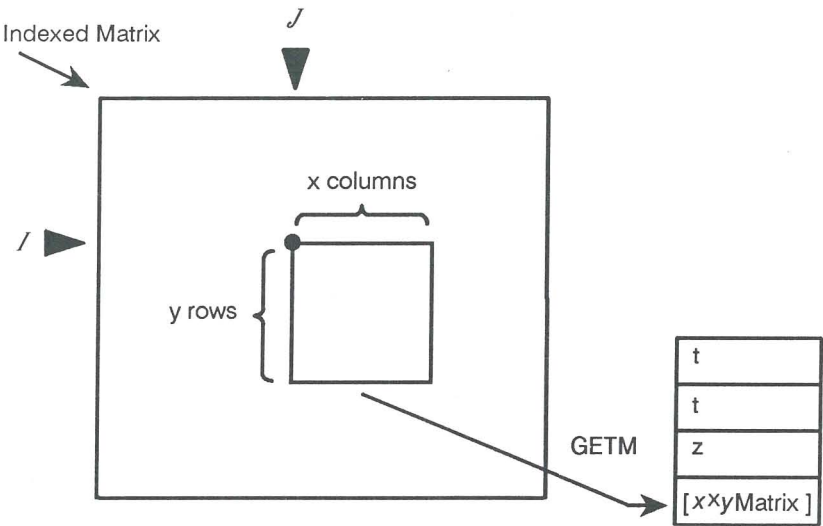
# Swapping Rows

The  $R<>R$  (*row swap row*) function swaps the contents of two rows in the currently indexed matrix. Key the two row numbers into the X- and Y-registers, and then execute  $R<>R$ .



# Submatrices

## To get a submatrix from the indexed matrix:

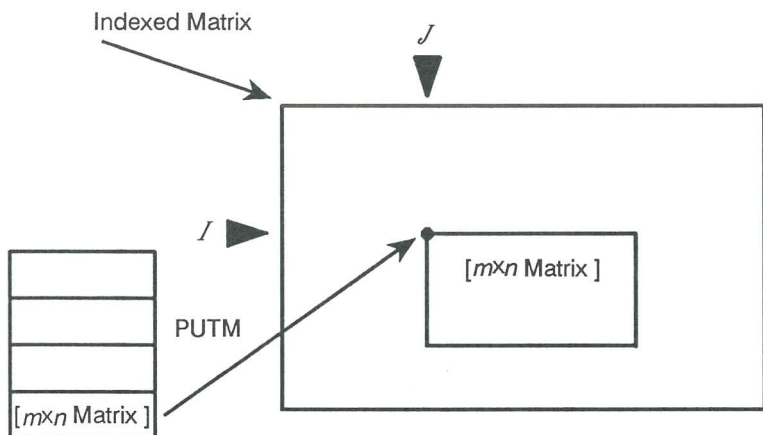
- 1. Move the index pointers to the first element of the submatrix.
- 2. Enter the dimensions of the submatrix: number of rows in the Y-register and number of columns in the X-register.
- 3. Execute the GETM (*get matrix*) function (  **MATRIX**  **GETM** ). GETM recalls the submatrix to the X-register.



## To put a submatrix into the indexed matrix:

- 1. Move the index pointers to the element where you want the first element of the submatrix to go.
- 2. Execute the PUTM (*put matrix*) function (  **MATRIX**  **PUTM** ). PUTM copies the matrix in the X-register, element for element, into the indexed matrix beginning at the current element.





## Special Matrices in the HP-42S

In addition to the matrix variables that you create, there are several that are automatically created.

### The Storage Registers (*REGS*)

The data storage registers are actually a special  $m \times n$  matrix in calculator memory (where  $\text{SIZE} = m \times n$ ). The name *REGS* is reserved for the storage registers matrix (and can only be used to store a matrix).

### Matrices for Simultaneous Equations

The matrices *MATA*, *MATB*, and *MATX* are created (and redimensioned if necessary) whenever you execute **SIMQ**. The data stored in these three matrices remains until you work another problem or clear the variables.

## Statistics



---

In this chapter you will learn how to:

- Enter statistical data into the HP-42S.
  - Calculate statistical results based on accumulated data.
  - Use statistical data stored in a matrix.
  - Fit a curve to the data you've entered using one of four models.
  - Forecast future values based on a curve fitted to your data.
- 

### Entering Statistical Data

Statistical data is saved with the  $\Sigma+$  (*summation plus*) key, which accumulates data into a block of storage registers containing *summation coefficients*. Executing  $\Sigma+$  adds *two* values to the statistical data: an *x*-value (from the X-register) and a *y*-value (from the Y-register). The number of accumulated data points, *n*, is returned to the X-register.

**Clearing Statistical Data.** Before you begin accumulating a new set of data, press  **CLEAR**  **CLΣ** (*clear statistics*) to clear data in the summation registers.

**Two-Variable Statistics.** To enter two-variable statistical data (*x*- and *y*-values):

1. Key in the *y*-value, and then press  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$ .
2. Key in the *x*-value.
3. Press  $\Sigma+$ .

Repeat these steps for each data pair in the data set.

**One-Variable Statistics.** To enter one-variable statistical data (that is,  $x$ -values only), first key in a 0 for the  $y$ -value (0  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$ ) and then, for *each* data point:

1. Key in an  $x$ -value.
2. Press  $\boxed{\Sigma+}$ .

**Uniformly Spaced Single-Variable Statistics.** For some applications, you may want the accumulated  $y$ -values to be uniformly spaced integers. This allows you to use one-variable statistical data to do curve fitting and forecasting using the linear and logarithmic curve-fitting models. (The exponential and power models are invalid because the first  $y$ -value is zero.)

For the *first*  $x$ -value, press 0  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$   $x$ -value  $\boxed{\Sigma+}$ . For each subsequent  $x$ -value:

1. Press  $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$  to lift  $n$  into the Y-register.
2. Key in the  $x$ -value.
3. Press  $\boxed{\Sigma+}$ .

**Example: Using Statistics.** Below is a chart of maximum and minimum monthly winter (October–March) rainfall values in Corvallis, Oregon. Accumulate the values into the statistics registers.

	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.
<b>Y Maximum</b> (inches of rain)	9.70	18.28	14.47	15.51	15.23	11.70
<b>X Minimum</b> (inches of rain)	0.10	0.22	2.33	1.99	0.12	0.43

Start by clearing any statistical data that may have been previously stored in the summation registers.

$\boxed{\text{CLEAR}}$   $\boxed{\text{CL}\Sigma}$

Y: 0.0000  
X: 0.0000

Enter the first data pair (remember,  $y$ -value first).

9.7 **ENTER** .1  **$\Sigma+$**

Y: 9.7000  
X: 1.0000

Notice that the number in the  $Y$ -register did not move when you pressed  **$\Sigma+$** . The  $x$ -value (0.10) was saved in LAST X and replaced in the  $X$ -register with  $n$ , the number of accumulations made so far (1).

Enter the remaining data.

18.28 **ENTER** .22  **$\Sigma+$**

Y: 18.2800  
X: 2.0000

14.47 **ENTER** 2.33  **$\Sigma+$**

Y: 14.4700  
X: 3.0000

15.51 **ENTER** 1.99  **$\Sigma+$**

Y: 15.5100  
X: 4.0000

15.23 **ENTER** .12  **$\Sigma+$**

Y: 15.2300  
X: 5.0000

11.7 **ENTER** .43  **$\Sigma+$**

Y: 11.7000  
X: 6.0000

Now, calculate the average monthly minimum and maximum rainfall.

**STAT** **MEAN**

X: 0.8650  
 **$\Sigma+$**  **SUM** **MEAN** **MIN** **MAX** **SDV** **CFIT**

The average minimum monthly rainfall is 0.865 inches (average of the  $x$ -values).

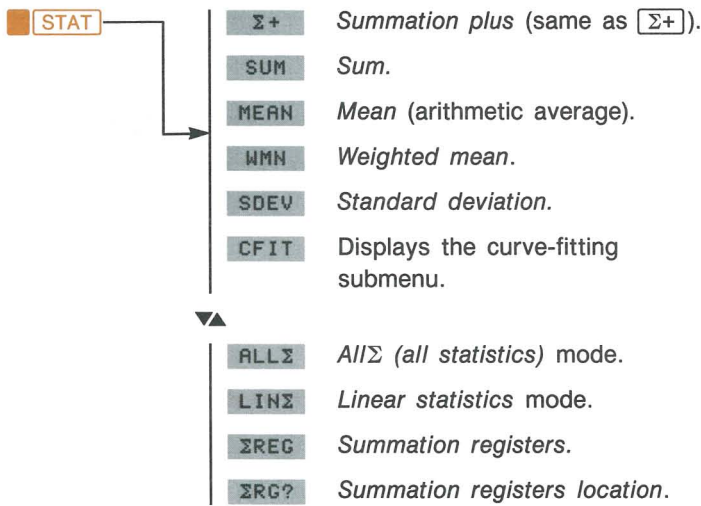
**$x \leftrightarrow y$**

X: 14.1483  
 **$\Sigma+$**  **SUM** **MEAN** **MIN** **MAX** **SDV** **CFIT**

The average maximum monthly rainfall is 14.1483 inches (average of the  $y$ -values).

# Statistical Functions

The SUM, MEAN, WMEAN, and SDEV functions (in the STAT menu) allow you to calculate results from statistical data you've entered.



## Sums

The SUM function returns the sum of accumulated  $x$ - and  $y$ -values into the X- and Y-registers, respectively.

## Mean

As shown in the rainfall example above, the MEAN function returns the arithmetic mean (average) of the  $x$ - and  $y$ -values that have been stored with  $\Sigma+$ . The mean of  $x$  is returned to the X-register and the mean of  $y$  is returned to the Y-register.

## Weighted Mean

The WMEAN function (  $\Sigma$  STAT WMN ) calculates the mean of  $x$ -values weighted by the  $y$ -values ( $\Sigma xy \div \Sigma y$ ).

## Standard Deviation

The SDEV (*standard deviation*) function computes the sample standard deviations,\*  $s_x$  and  $s_y$ , of the data stored with  $\Sigma+$  and places them in the X- and Y-registers, respectively.

**Example: Calculating Standard Deviations.** If you worked the rainfall example earlier, calculate the standard deviations about the means. (If the STAT menu is not displayed, press  $\blacksquare$   $\Sigma+$ .)

SDEV

x: 1.0156

$\Sigma+$  SUM MEAN WMN SDEV CFIT

xzy

x: 3.0325

$\Sigma+$  SUM MEAN WMN SDEV CFIT

EXIT

The standard deviations are  $s_x = 1.0156$  and  $s_y = 3.0325$ .

---

## Correcting Mistakes

If you discover that you have entered and accumulated incorrect data points, you can correct the mistake by using  $\blacksquare$   $\Sigma-$  (*summation minus*).

Errors are corrected by reentering *both* the  $x$ - and  $y$ -values, pressing  $\blacksquare$   $\Sigma-$ , and then entering the correct data. Even if only one value of an  $(x,y)$  data pair is incorrect, you must delete and reenter *both* values.

If the incorrect data point or pair is the most recent one entered and  $\Sigma+$  has just been pressed, you can execute  $\blacksquare$   $\text{LASTx}$   $\blacksquare$   $\Sigma-$  to remove the incorrect data. Otherwise:

1. Reenter the *incorrect* data pair into the X- and Y-registers.

\* The SDEV function calculates the *sample standard deviation*, which assumes the data is a sampling of a larger, complete set of data. If your data constitutes the entire population of data, the *true population standard deviation* can be computed by calculating the mean of the original data, adding the mean to the statistical data using  $\Sigma+$ , and then executing SDEV.

2. Press  $\boxed{\Sigma-}$ . This function acts similarly to  $\boxed{\Sigma+}$  except that the results are subtracted from (rather than added to) the summation coefficients. The number of data pairs,  $n$ , is decremented by one.
3. Enter the correct data values:  $y\text{-value}$   $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$   $x\text{-value}$ .
4. Press  $\boxed{\Sigma+}$ .

## The Summation Registers





The calculator uses a block of storage registers to save the summation coefficients. The current statistical mode determines how many coefficients are saved.






AllΣ mode {	R <sub>11</sub>	$\Sigma x$	} Linear mode*
	R <sub>12</sub>	$\Sigma x^2$	
	R <sub>13</sub>	$\Sigma y$	
	R <sub>14</sub>	$\Sigma y^2$	
	R <sub>15</sub>	$\Sigma xy$	
	R <sub>16</sub>	$n$	
	R <sub>17</sub>	$\Sigma \ln x$	
	R <sub>18</sub>	$\Sigma (\ln x)^2$	
	R <sub>19</sub>	$\Sigma \ln y$	
	R <sub>20</sub>	$\Sigma (\ln y)^2$	
	R <sub>21</sub>	$\Sigma \ln x \ln y$	
	R <sub>22</sub>	$\Sigma x \ln y$	
	R <sub>23</sub>	$\Sigma y \ln x$	


\* These are the same six coefficients used for statistics on the HP-41 family of calculators. Before running an HP-41 program that uses statistical functions, you may need to select Linear mode to assure proper execution of the program.



**To select AllΣ mode:** Press    . In AllΣ mode (the default), the calculator saves 13 summation coefficients. This allows you to do curve fitting and forecasting using four curve models (explained later in this chapter).


**To select Linear mode:** Press    . In Linear mode, the calculator saves only six summation coefficients. This is the minimum set of values needed to do curve fitting and forecasting using the linear model (linear regression).

**Changing the Location of the Summation Registers.** By default, the first summation register is  $R_{11}$ . However, you can change the location of the summation registers with the  (*summation registers*) function. Press     *nn*; where *nn* is the number of the first register.







For example, to relocate the statistical registers to  $R_{07}$ , press     07.



### Note

The  function does not move any data; it only identifies which registers are used to accumulate the summation coefficients. If you want to move the location of the summation registers, do it *before* entering any data.

---

The  (*summation registers location*) function returns the register number of the first summation register. To execute the  function, press    .

**Nonexistent Summation Registers.** After setting the number of summation registers (6 or 13), it is possible to reduce the SIZE such that one or more of the summation registers no longer exists. Statistical functions that directly access the summation registers will not operate unless *all* of the summation registers exist.

**Example: Viewing the Summation Coefficients.** George, owner of the Fish On Cafe, kept a record of Winter Steelhead fish caught by his customers in the nearby Wilson River. Enter the data below and then edit the storage registers to view the summation coefficients.

Weight of Fish (lbs.) (x-values)	Quantity (y-values)
6	8
7	12
8	24
9	23
10	15
11	9

Select AllΣ mode and then clear the summation registers.

**STAT** **▼** **ALLΣ** **EXIT**

**CLEAR** **CLΣ**

8 **ENTER** 6 **Σ+**

Y: 8.0000  
X: 1.0000

12 **ENTER** 7 **Σ+**

Y: 12.0000  
X: 2.0000

24 **ENTER** 8 **Σ+**

Y: 24.0000  
X: 3.0000

23 **ENTER** 9 **Σ+**

Y: 23.0000  
X: 4.0000

15 **ENTER** 10 **Σ+**

Y: 15.0000  
X: 5.0000

9 **ENTER** 11 **Σ+**

Y: 9.0000  
X: 6.0000

Unless you've changed the location of the summation registers, the first coefficient ( $\Sigma x$ ) is stored in  $R_{11}$ . Use the Matrix Editor to view the REGS matrix.

**MATRIX** **▼** **EDITN** **REGS**

1:1=0.0000

**÷** **OLD** **↑** **↓** **GOTO** **→**

Go to element 12:1 (which is  $R_{11}$ ).

**GOTO** 12 **ENTER** 1 **ENTER**

12:1=51.0000					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

This is the  $\Sigma x$  coefficient. Using **→**, move through the registers and view all 13 coefficients. Compare them with the data above and the illustration on page 233.

**→**

13:1=451.0000					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

14:1=91.0000					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

15:1=1,619.0000					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

16:1=780.0000					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

17:1=6.0000					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

18:1=12.7148					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

19:1=27.2006					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

20:1=15.7832					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

21:1=42.5915					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

**→**

22:1=33.5635					
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO	→

→

23:1=134.7648				
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO →

→

24:1=194.2476				
←	OLD	↑	↓	GOTO →

EXIT EXIT

Y: 9.0000	
X: 194.2476	

Now, if you have a printer, print the summation coefficients using the  $\text{PR}\Sigma$  (*print statistics*) function. (If necessary, press PRINT ▲ PON to enable printing.)

PRINT PRΣ


---

## Limitations on Data Values

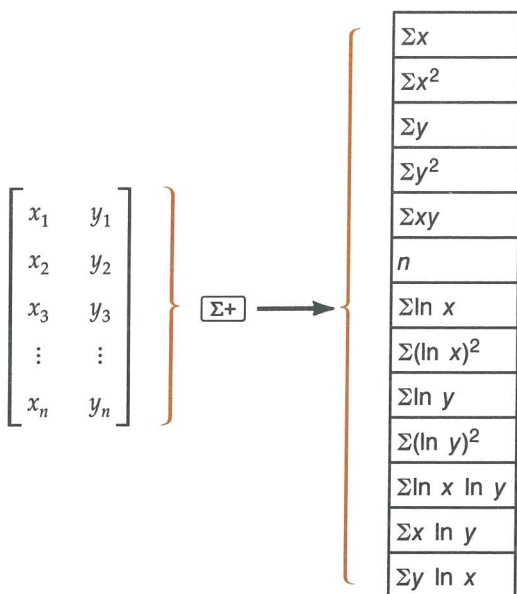
The calculator might be unable to perform some statistical calculations if your data values differ by a relatively small amount. To avoid this, you should normalize your data by entering the values as the difference from one value (such as the mean). This difference must then be added back to any calculations of the mean. For example, if your  $x$ -values were 776999, 777000, and 777001, you should enter the data as -1, 0, and 1; then add 777000 back to the relevant results.

If the  $\Sigma+$  function causes the contents of a register to exceed  $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ , *there is no overflow error*; the overflowed register contains  $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ .

---

## Using Statistical Data Stored in a Matrix

You can enter statistical data into an  $n \times 2$  matrix and then accumulate all of the data by pressing  $\Sigma+$  with the matrix in the X-register. The first column of the matrix contains the  $x$ -values, and the second column contains the  $y$ -values.



### To use a matrix for statistical calculations:

1. Create a  $1 \times 2$  named matrix. (Example: 1  2     .
2. Activate the Matrix Editor. (Example:  .
3. Use Grow mode ( ) so the matrix will grow as you enter each data pair.
4. Enter the first data pair into the matrix: *x-value*  *y-value*.
5. For each additional data pair:
  - a. Press  to grow the matrix by one row.
  - b. Enter the data pair: *x-value*  *y-value*.
6. Press   to clear the summation registers.
7. Place the matrix in the X-register. (Example:  .
8. Press  to accumulate the data. The number of data pairs,  $n$ , is returned to the X-register and a copy of the matrix is saved in the LAST X register.

After the data is accumulated to the summation registers, you can work with it using any of the statistical functions.

The example in the next section uses data stored in a matrix. The *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020) contains a utility program that makes data entry into a statistical matrix even easier.

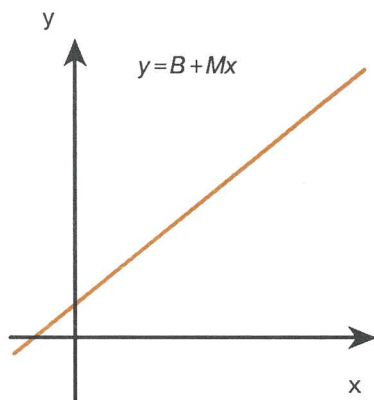
---

## Curve Fitting and Forecasting

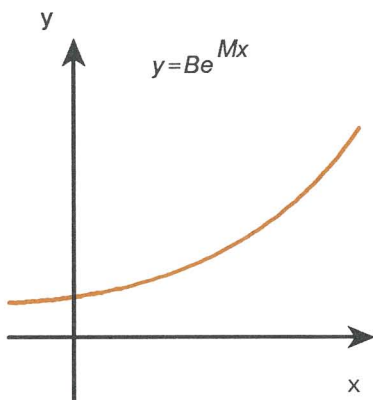
Curve fitting is a technique for finding a mathematical relationship between two variables,  $x$  and  $y$ . Based on this relationship, you can *forecast* a new value of  $y$  based on a given  $x$ -value, or a new value of  $x$  based on a given  $y$ -value.

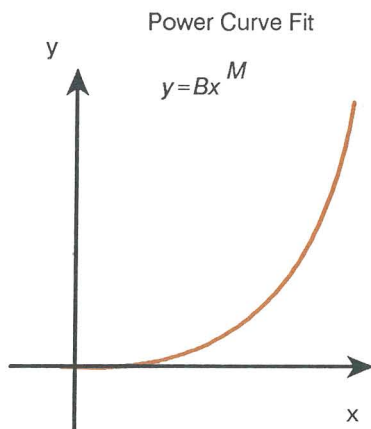
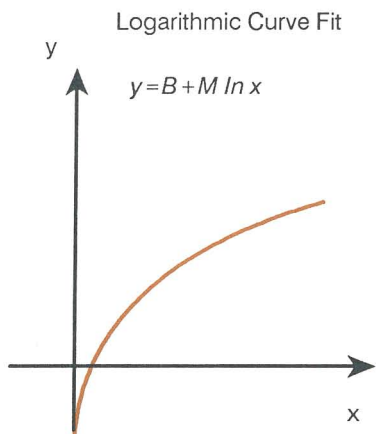
To establish the relationships between the  $x$ - and  $y$ -values, you can select one of the four curve-fitting *models*:

Linear Curve Fit



Exponential Curve Fit





### To do curve fitting and forecasting:

1. If necessary, press **STAT** **▼** **ALLΣ** to select AllΣ mode (enabling the use of all four curve-fitting models).
2. Accumulate the statistical data into the summation registers using **Σ+** or **Σ+**.
3. Select a curve-fitting model: **STAT** **CFIT** **MODL**, and then **LINF**, **LOGF**, **EXPF**, or **PWRF**. (The menu label for the currently selected model is marked with a white box.)

Or, press **BEST** to have the calculator select a model for you. The BEST function examines the statistical data and selects the model that returns the highest correlation coefficient.

Press **EXIT** to return to the CFIT submenu.

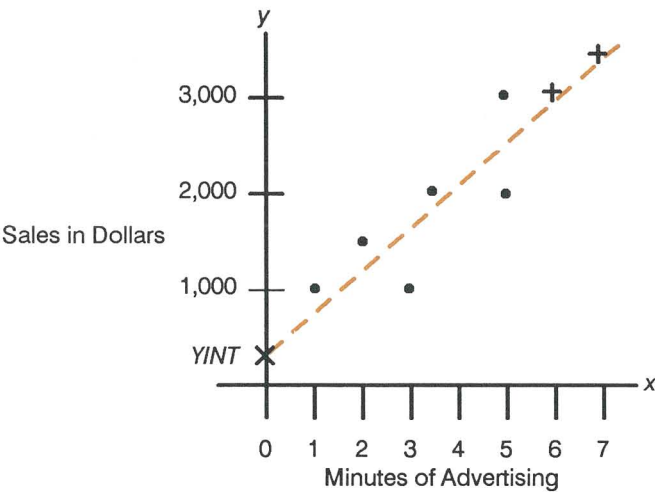
4. Execute the function(s) you want:
  - **FCSTX** (forecast  $x$ ). Key in a  $y$ -value and then press **FCSTX**.
  - **FCSTY** (forecast  $y$ ). Key in an  $x$ -value and then press **FCSTY**.
  - **SLOPE**. Calculates the slope of the linear transformation for the current model.
  - **YINT** ( $y$ -intercept). Calculates the  $y$ -intercept of the linear transformation for the current model.
  - **CORR** (correlation coefficient). Calculates a coefficient ( $-1 \leq r \leq 1$ ) that indicates how closely the accumulated data matches the current curve-fitting model.



**Example: Forecasting.** Smith’s Moss Garden advertises on a local radio station. For the past six weeks, the manager has kept records of the number of minutes of advertising purchased and the sales per week.

	Number of Minutes of Radio Advertising (x-values)	Dollar Sales (y-values)
Week 1	2	\$1,400
Week 2	1	\$ 920
Week 3	3	\$1,100
Week 4	5	\$2,265
Week 5	5	\$2,890
Week 6	4	\$2,200

Smith’s wants to determine whether there is a linear relationship between the amount of radio advertising and the weekly sales. If a strong relationship exists, Smith’s wants to use the relationship to forecast sales. A graph of the data looks like this:



Set the display format to FIX 2 (for dollars and cents).

**DISP** **FIX** 02

Y: 15.00  
X: 9.00

Enter the data from the table above into a matrix named  $\Sigma$ LIST. Start with a  $1 \times 2$  matrix.

1 **ENTER** 2 **MATRIX** **▼** **DIM**  
**ENTER**  $\Sigma$ LIST **ENTER**\*

X: 2.00  
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITW

Activate the Editor on  $\Sigma$ LIST and select Grow mode so the matrix will grow to the necessary size as you enter the data.

**EDITW**  $\Sigma$ LIST **▼** **GROW** **▲**

1:1=0.00  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Enter the data.

2 → 1400

1:2=1,400\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 1 → 920

2:2=920\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 3 → 1100

3:2=1,100\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 5 → 2265

4:2=2,265\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 5 → 2890

5:2=2,890\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 4 → 2200

6:2=2,200\_  
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

\* To type  $\Sigma$ LIST, press **▼** **MATH**  **$\Sigma$**  **▲** **JKLM** **L** **FGHI** **I** **RSTUV**  
**S** **RSTUV** **T**.

Be sure the calculator is in AllΣ mode and then clear the summation registers.

**STAT** **▼** **ALLΣ** **CLEAR** **CLΣ**

x: 2,200.00  
ALLΣ LINE ΣREG ERG?

Accumulate the statistical data in ΣLIST.

**RCL** **ΣLIST** **▲** **Σ+**

x: 6.00  
Σ+ SUM MEAN WMN SDEV CFIT

Select the linear curve-fitting model.

**CFIT** **MODL** **LINE** **EXIT**

x: 6.00  
FCSTX FCSTY SLOPE YINT CORR MODL

Calculate the correlation coefficient. This number indicates how well the data conforms to the linear model.

**CORR**

x: 0.90  
FCSTX FCSTY SLOPE YINT CORR MODL

This correlation coefficient is acceptable to Smith's. Using the linear model, estimate what the level of sales would be if the business purchased 7 minutes of advertising time per week. (That is, enter an  $x$ -value of 7 and forecast a  $y$ -value.)

7 **FCSTY**

x: 3,357.38  
FCSTX FCSTY SLOPE YINT CORR MODL

How many minutes of advertising should Smith's buy if it wants to attain sales of \$3,000? (Enter a  $y$ -value and forecast an  $x$ -value.)

3000 **FCSTX**

x: 6.16  
FCSTX FCSTY SLOPE YINT CORR MODL

The business should buy about 6 minutes of advertising per week to increase sales to \$3000.

---

# How Curve Fitting Works

The exponential, logarithmic, and power models are calculated using transformations that allow the data to be fitted by standard linear regression. The equations for these transformations appear in the table below. The logarithmic model requires positive  $x$ -values, the exponential model requires positive  $y$ -values, and the power curve requires positive  $x$ - and  $y$ -values.

**Transformation Equations**

Model	Transformation
Logarithmic	$y = b + m \ln x$
Exponential	$\ln y = \ln b + mx$
Power	$\ln y = \ln b + m \ln x$

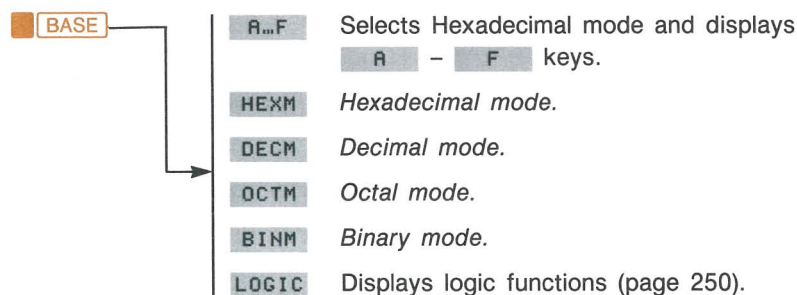
## Base Operations

The HP-42S is capable of displaying numbers in four different bases: hexadecimal, decimal, octal, and binary. In this chapter you will learn how to:

- Select and use different number bases.
- Perform integer (base) arithmetic and use the logic functions.
- Use the programmable functions for selecting number bases.

## Base Conversions

The BASE menu makes it easy to enter and display numbers in any of the four base modes.



Select the Base application. The white box indicates that the current mode is Decimal (base 10).

**BASE**

x: 0.0000  
R...F HEXM **DEC** OCTM BINM LOGIC

Key in a number and then switch to Hexadecimal mode (base 16).

31806 **HEXM**

x: 7C3E  
A...F HEX= DECM OCTM BINM LOGIC

Switch to Octal mode to display the number in base 8.

**OCTM**

x: 76076  
A...F HEXM DECM OCT= BINM LOGIC

Now, key in the hexadecimal number A14D. Pressing **A...F** automatically selects Hexadecimal mode and displays a submenu for keying the digits A through F.

**A...F**

x: 7C3E  
A B C D E F

A14D

x: A14D\_  
A B C D E F

Display A14D<sub>16</sub> in Binary mode (base 2).

**EXIT** **BINM**

x: 1010000101001101  
A...F HEXM DECM OCTM BIN= LOGIC

Change the sign of the number (which is the 2's complement).

**+/-**

x: 1111111111111111...  
A...F HEXM DECM OCTM BIN= LOGIC

To view a binary number that is too large for the display, press and hold **SHOW**.

**SHOW** (hold down)

1111111111111111101  
01111010110011

(release)

x: 1111111111111111...  
A...F HEXM DECM OCTM BIN= LOGIC

When you exit from the Base application, the calculator returns to Decimal mode.

**EXIT**

y: 31,806.0000  
x: -41,293.0000

**Keying In Numbers of Different Bases.** The current base mode determines which digit keys can be used to key in numbers:

- In Hexadecimal mode use the  $\boxed{0}$  –  $\boxed{9}$  and  $\boxed{A}$  –  $\boxed{F}$  keys (press  $\boxed{R\ldots F}$  to select the A...F menu).
- In Decimal mode use the  $\boxed{0}$  –  $\boxed{9}$  keys.
- In Octal mode use the  $\boxed{0}$  –  $\boxed{7}$  keys.
- In Binary mode use the  $\boxed{0}$  and  $\boxed{1}$  keys.

The calculator will not allow you to key in nondecimal numbers that exceed the 36-bit word length. Refer to “Range of Numbers” below.

**Base Arithmetic.** The Base application redefines the arithmetic keys ( $\boxed{+}$ ,  $\boxed{-}$ ,  $\boxed{\times}$ ,  $\boxed{\div}$ , and  $\boxed{+/-}$ ) to their corresponding integer arithmetic functions. For example, if you press  $\boxed{+}$ , the calculator executes the BASE+ function instead of the normal addition function. Refer to “Integer Arithmetic” later in this chapter.

---

## The Representation of Numbers

Base modes change the way real numbers are keyed in and displayed. Internally, however, real numbers are stored in decimal form regardless of the base mode.

In Hexadecimal, Octal, and Binary modes, numbers appear as integers. However, since the internal representation does not change, each number may have a nonzero fractional part. The calculator indicates that a nonzero fractional part exists by displaying a decimal point after the integer.

7C3E



This number *does not* have a fractional part internally.

7C3E.



This number *does* have a fractional part internally.



## Negative Numbers

The left-most (most significant or “highest”) bit of a number’s binary representation is the sign bit; it is set (1) for negative numbers. If there are leading zeros (not displayed), then the sign bit is 0 (positive). A negative number is the 2’s complement of its positive binary number.

## Showing Numbers

The  **SHOW** key can be used in the Base application to:

- Display a hexadecimal, decimal, or octal number in full-precision *decimal* form.
- Display all 36 bits of a binary number.

## Range of Numbers

The 36-bit word size determines the range of numbers that can be displayed in Hexadecimal, Octal, and Binary modes.

## Range of Numbers for Base Conversions

[illegible]

The calculator does not allow you to key in a *nondecimal* number outside this range. For example, if you attempt to key in a 10-digit hexadecimal number, digit entry halts after the ninth digit.

**Numbers Too Big To Display.** Nondecimal numbers outside the 36-bit range are displayed as <Too Big>. Don't mistake <Too Big> for an error message—it's merely the calculator's way of displaying a number that is too big to display in the current number base.

---

## Integer Arithmetic

There are five functions for doing 36-bit integer arithmetic. These functions use only the integer portion of their operands and return only integer results. For example, if you add the numbers 15.7832 and 10.4859 using the BASE+ function, the result is 25.0000 because the fraction portion of each operand is ignored.

### 36-Bit Arithmetic Functions

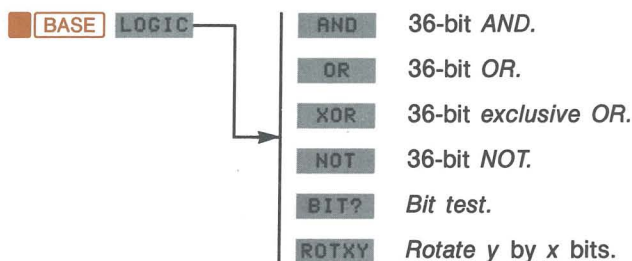
Function	Description
BASE+	Integer addition.
BASE−	Integer subtraction.
BASE×	Integer multiplication.
BASE÷	Integer division.
BASE+ / −	2's complement.
Note: When the BASE menu is displayed, these functions are automatically assigned to the $\boxed{+}$ , $\boxed{-}$ , $\boxed{\times}$ , $\boxed{\div}$ , and $\boxed{+/-}$ keys, respectively.	

The calculator displays **Out of Range** if the result produced by any of these operations is greater than the 36-bit word size. If flag 24 (*range ignore*) is set, the calculator substitutes the maximum 36-bit number and does not report an error.

---

## The Logic Functions

Pressing **LOGIC** in the BASE menu displays a submenu containing six logical functions. Like the integer arithmetic functions, the logic functions use only the integer portion of a number and return only integers as results.



**The Boolean Logic Functions.** The AND, OR, and XOR functions are two-number functions. That is, they take two numbers (from the X- and Y-registers) and return a result to the X-register.

The NOT function returns the 36-bit logical NOT of the number in the X-register.

**Bit Test.** To test the  $x^{\text{th}}$  bit of the number in the Y-register, execute the BIT? function. Bits are numbered from 0 (the least significant bit) through 35 (the most significant bit). For example, the bits in this binary number\* are numbered as shown:

```

101001111011011110101101001000011101
  ↑                                     ↑
Bit number 35                       Bit number 0

```

If BIT? is executed from the keyboard, the calculator displays *Yes* or *No* indicating whether the specified bit is set.

In a running program, the BIT? function follows the do-if-true rule—if the specified bit is set (1), the next program line is executed; if the bit is not set (0), the next program line is skipped.

\* The decimal equivalent of this number is -23,698,157,027.

**Rotating a 36-Bit Number.** To rotate a 36-bit number by a specified number of bits, enter the number into the Y-register, the number of bits in the X-register, and then execute the ROTXY function. If the number of bits specified in the X-register is positive, the rotation is to the right. If the number of bits is negative, the rotation is to the left.

ROTXY returns the rotated number to the X-register and drops the stack.

---

## Programming Information

To select a base mode in a program, execute HEXM, DECM, OCTM, or BINM. If a program stops after executing one of these instructions, the BASE menu is displayed and real numbers are input and displayed using the base mode that was selected. To exit the BASE menu, the program can then execute the EXITALL function.

You can also use the BASE menu for entering the base conversion and logic functions into a program. However, numbers entered directly into program lines are always entered and displayed in *decimal* form.

**Example: A Program That Uses Base Operations.** The following program prompts for an octal number and a binary number, adds them together, and displays the sum in Hexadecimal mode.

01 LBL "0BH"	Global label.
02 OCTM	Selects Octal mode and inputs
03 INPUT 01	the first number into R <sub>01</sub> .
04 BINM	Selects Binary mode and inputs
05 INPUT 02	the second number into R <sub>02</sub> .
06 RCL 01	Recalls a copy of the first number
07 BASE+	and adds to the second.
08 HEXM	Selects Hexadecimal mode, dis-
09 VIEW ST X	plays the result, and exits the
10 EXITALL	BASE menu.
11 END	





# Part 4

## Appendixes and Reference

---

<b>Page</b>	<b>254</b>	<b>A: Assistance, Batteries, and Service</b>
	<b>267</b>	<b>B: Managing Calculator Memory</b>
	<b>273</b>	<b>C: Flags</b>
	<b>283</b>	<b>D: Messages</b>
	<b>288</b>	<b>E: Character Table</b>
	<b>292</b>	<b>Menu Maps</b>
	<b>310</b>	<b>Operation Index</b>
	<b>336</b>	<b>Subject Index</b>

# A

## Assistance, Batteries, and Service

### Obtaining Help in Operating the Calculator

Hewlett-Packard is committed to providing the owners of HP calculators with ongoing support. You can obtain answers to your questions about using the calculator from our Calculator Support department.

You should read the next section, "Answers to Common Questions," before contacting us. Past experience has shown that many of our customers have similar questions about our products. If you don't find an answer to your question, you can contact us using the address or phone number listed on the inside back cover.

### Answers to Common Questions

**Q:** *I'm not sure if the calculator is malfunctioning or if I'm doing something incorrectly. How can I determine if the calculator is operating properly?*

**A:** Refer to page 261, which describes the diagnostic self-test.

**Q:** *My numbers contain commas as decimal points. How do I restore the periods?*

**A:** Press  **DISP**  **RDX.** . Also check the status of flag 29 (page 276).

**Q:** *How do I change the number of decimal places the calculator displays?*

**A:** The procedure is described under "Number of Decimal Places" on page 34.



**Q:** When I take the sine of  $\pi$  in radians mode, I get a small number ( $-2.06761537357 \text{ E-13}$ ) instead of zero. Why?

**A:** The value returned is correct. While  $\pi$  has an infinite number of significant digits, the HP-42S uses the best possible 12-digit approximation of  $\pi$ . Given the inherent limitation of a finite number of input digits, the trigonometric functions provide the most accurate 12-digit results possible.

**Q:** When I calculate  $\sqrt[3]{-27}$  ( $27 \text{ } \boxed{+/ -} \text{ } \boxed{\text{ENTER}} \text{ } 3 \text{ } \boxed{1/x} \text{ } \boxed{y^x}$ ) I get a complex number ( $1.5000 \text{ i}2.5981$ ). Why?

**A:** The value returned is correct. There are three possible answers, the HP-42S returns the root in the first quadrant. If you switch to Polar mode ( $\boxed{\text{MODES}} \text{ } \boxed{\text{POLAR}}$ ) you'll see that the number is  $3 \angle 60^\circ$ .

To calculate the real-number cube root, use the following program:

```
01 LBL "CROOT"  
02 SIGN  
03 LASTX  
04 3  
05 1/X  
06 Y+X  
07 ABS  
08 x  
09 END
```

**Q:** My calculator doesn't stop to display answers. They appear briefly and then computation resumes. How can I get the program to stop long enough to read the results?

**A:** Set flag 21 ( $\boxed{\text{FLAGS}} \text{ } \boxed{\text{SF}} \text{ } 21$ ). Flags 21 and 55 are used in conjunction to control the display and printer output. For more information on these flags, refer to pages 131 and 132.

**Q:** How do I clear all or portions of memory?

**A:** Press  $\boxed{\text{CLEAR}}$  to display the CLEAR menu then execute the function you need. Refer to page 26.





**Q:** What does an "E" in a number mean? (For example,  $2.51\text{E}-13$ .)


**A:** Exponent of ten (such as  $2.51 \times 10^{-13}$ ). Refer to "Exponents of Ten" on page 27.




**Q:** *The calculator has displayed the message Insufficient Memory. What should I do?*

**A:** There is not enough memory to complete the operation that you attempted. Refer to appendix B, "Managing Calculator Memory."








**Q:** *Why isn't my calculator printing when I want it to?*

**A:** Printing is disabled. Press     to enable printing. Also refer to the owner's manual for the printer to see that you are positioning the calculator properly in front of the printer.

**Q:** *The calculator is operating slowly, and the  annunciator is blinking. Why?*

**A:** The calculator is trace printing. Press     to turn tracing off (page 102).

**Q:** *The beeper is not working. Why?*

**A:** The beeper has been disabled by executing the QUIET function or by clearing flag 26. Set the flag by pressing     or    26.



**Q:** *How do I key in consecutive numbers in a program?*

**A:** Key in the first number, press  , and then key in the second number (page 118).

**Q:** *What is indirect addressing?*

**A:** It is used when a parameter for a particular function is stored in a variable or register. That variable or register is addressed (indirectly) by the function (page 74).

**Q:** *Why can't I get to the end of the matrix I'm editing? It appears to be much larger than when I created it.*

**A:** The Matrix Editor is in Grow mode. In the Matrix Editor menu, press   to disable Grow mode (page 213).

---


## Power and Batteries

The calculator is shipped with three mercury batteries. A fresh set of three mercury or silver oxide batteries provides approximately one year of normal use. (Alkaline batteries last about half as long.) However, expected battery life depends on how the calculator is used. Printing and long calculations require much more power than other operations.

Use only fresh button-cell batteries. Do not use rechargeable batteries. The following batteries are recommended for use. Not all batteries are available in all countries.

<b>Mercury</b>	<b>Alkaline</b>	<b>Silver Oxide</b>
Panasonic NP675	Panasonic LR44	Panasonic SR44W or SP357
Duracell MP675H	Varta VI3GA	Eveready 357
Toshiba NR44 or MR44	Eveready A76	Ray-O-Vac 357
Radio Shack NR44 or MR44	Duracell LR44	Varta V357
Eveready EP675E		

## Low-Power Indications

When the low-battery annunciator () comes on, replace the batteries as soon as possible.

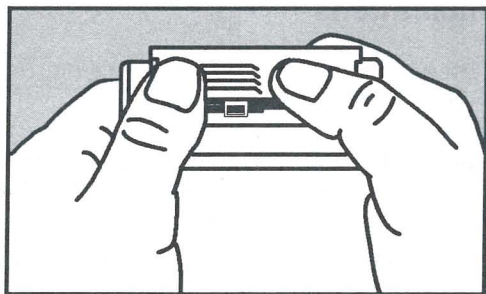
If you continue to use the calculator after the battery annunciator comes on, power can eventually drop to a level at which the calculator stops powering the display and keyboard. The calculator will require fresh batteries before it can be turned back on. When you turn the calculator on after fresh batteries have been installed, the calculator displays **Machine Reset** if your stored data is intact. If data has been lost, the calculator displays **Memory Clear**.

To conserve battery power, printing does not function when the battery annunciator is on. Printing might halt during a printing operation due to a borderline low-battery condition. The calculator can detect that there is insufficient power for printing before the battery annunciator comes on.

## Installing Batteries

**Once the batteries are removed, you must replace the batteries within one minute to prevent loss of Continuous Memory.** Therefore, you should have the new batteries readily at hand before removing the batteries. Also, you must make sure the calculator is off during the entire process of changing batteries.

1. Have three fresh button-cell batteries at hand.
2. Make sure the calculator is *off*. **Do not press EXIT again until the entire procedure for changing batteries is completed. Changing batteries with the calculator on will erase the contents of Continuous Memory.**
3. Hold the calculator as shown. To remove the battery-compartment door, press down and outward on it until it slides off (away from the center).



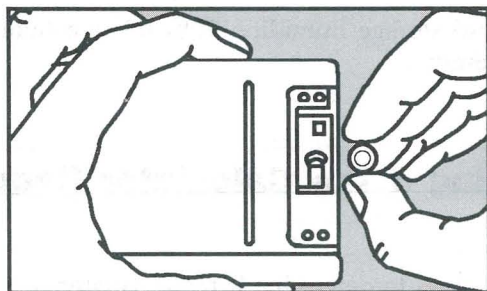
4. Turn the calculator over and shake the batteries out.



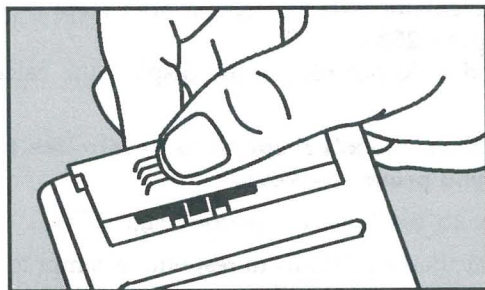
**Warning**

**Do not mutilate, puncture, or dispose of batteries in fire. The batteries can burst or explode, releasing hazardous chemicals.**

5. Hold the calculator as shown and stack the batteries, one at a time, in the battery compartment. Orient the batteries according to the diagram inside the battery compartment. Be sure the raised and flat ends match the diagram.



6. Insert the tab of the battery-compartment door into the slot in the calculator case, as shown.





Now turn the calculator back on. If it does not function, you might have taken too long to change the batteries or inadvertently turned the calculator on while the batteries were out. *Remove the batteries again and lightly press a coin against both battery contacts in the calculator for a few seconds.* Put the batteries back in and turn the calculator on. It should display **Memory Clear**.

---

## Environmental Limits

To maintain product reliability, observe the following limits:

- Operating temperature: 0° to 45°C (32° to 113°F).
- Storage temperature: -20° to 65°C (-4° to 149°F).
- Operating and storage humidity: 90% relative humidity at 40°C (104°F) maximum.

---

## Determining if the Calculator Requires Service

Use these guidelines to determine if the calculator requires service. If it does, read "If the Calculator Requires Service" on page 263.

- **If the calculator won't turn on (nothing is visible in the display):**
  1. Attempt to reset the calculator (page 267).
  2. If the calculator fails to respond after step 1, replace the batteries (page 258).

If steps 1 and 2 do not restore the display, the calculator requires service.

- **If the calculator doesn't respond to keystrokes (nothing happens when you press the keys):**
  1. Attempt to reset the calculator (page 267).
  2. If the calculator still fails to respond, attempt to clear all memory (page 268). This will erase all the information you've stored.

If steps 1 and 2 do not restore calculator function, the calculator requires service.

■ **If the calculator responds to keystrokes but you suspect that it is malfunctioning:**

1. Do the self-test (described below). If the calculator fails the self-test, it requires service.
2. If the calculator passes the self-test, it is quite likely you've made a mistake in operating the calculator. Try rereading portions of the manual, and check "Answers to Common Questions" on page 254.
3. Contact the Calculator Support department. The address and phone number are listed on the inside back cover.

---

## **Confirming Calculator Operation—the Self-Test**

If the display can be turned on, but it appears that the calculator is not operating properly, you can do a diagnostic self-test. The self-test runs continuously, repeating until you halt it.

To run the self-test:

1. Turn the calculator on.
2. If you have the optional infrared printer, turn it on. Certain diagnostic information is printed during the test.
3. To start the self-test, hold down **[EXIT]** while you press the **[LN]** key.\* Once the self-test has begun, do not press any keys until you are ready to halt the test.
4. During the test, the calculator beeps periodically and displays various patterns and characters. Watch for one of two messages that are displayed before the test automatically repeats:
  - If the calculator passes the self-test, the calculator displays **OK-42S-E**.
  - If the calculator displays **FAIL** followed by a number, the calculator may require service.

\* Pressing the **[LOG]** key starts another self-test that is used at the factory. If you accidentally start this self-test, you can stop it by holding down the **[EXIT]** key while you press the **[√x]** key.



5. To halt the self-test, hold down **EXIT** while you press the  **$\sqrt{x}$**  key. The calculator displays **Machine Reset**. If you press any other key instead, the test halts and the calculator displays a **FAIL** message. *This message results from an incorrect key being pressed and does not mean that the calculator requires service.*
6. If the calculator failed the self-test, repeat steps 3 through 5 to verify the results. If you do not have a printer, write down the messages that are displayed in step 5 above.

---

## Limited One-Year Warranty

### What Is Covered

*The calculator (except for the batteries, or damage caused by the batteries) is warranted by Hewlett-Packard against defects in materials and workmanship for one year from the date of original purchase. If you sell your unit or give it as a gift, the warranty is automatically transferred to the new owner and remains in effect for the original one-year period. During the warranty period, we will repair or, at our option, replace at no charge a product that proves to be defective, provided you return the product, shipping prepaid, to a Hewlett-Packard service center.*

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state, province to province, or country to country.

### What Is Not Covered

*Batteries, and damage caused by the batteries, are not covered by the Hewlett-Packard warranty. Check with the battery manufacturer about battery and battery leakage warranties.*

This warranty does not apply if the product has been damaged by accident or misuse or as the result of service or modification by other than an authorized Hewlett-Packard service center.

No other express warranty is given. The repair or replacement of a product is your exclusive remedy. **ANY OTHER IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS IS LIMITED TO THE ONE-YEAR DURATION OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY.** Some states, provinces, or countries do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you. **IN NO EVENT SHALL HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY BE LIABLE FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** Some states, provinces, or countries do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Products are sold on the basis of specifications applicable at the time of manufacture. Hewlett-Packard shall have no obligation to modify or update products once sold.

## **Consumer Transactions in the United Kingdom**

This warranty shall not apply to consumer transactions and shall not affect the statutory rights of a consumer. In relation to such transactions, the rights and obligations of Seller and Buyer shall be determined by statute.

---

## **If the Calculator Requires Service**

Hewlett-Packard maintains service centers in many countries. These centers will service a calculator whether it is under warranty or not. There is a charge for service after the warranty period. Calculators normally are serviced and reshipped within five working days of receipt.

## **Obtaining Service**

- *In the United States:* Send the calculator to the Calculator Service Center listed on the inside back cover.

- *In Europe:* Contact your HP sales office or dealer or HP's European headquarters for the location of the nearest service center. *Do not ship the calculator for service without first contacting a Hewlett-Packard office.*

Hewlett-Packard S.A.  
150, Route du Nant-d'Avril  
P.O. Box  
CH 1217 Meyrin 2  
Geneva, Switzerland  
Telephone: (022) 82 81 11

- *In other countries:* Contact your HP sales office or dealer or write to the U.S. Calculator Service Center (listed on the inside back cover) for the location of other service centers. If local service is unavailable, you can ship the calculator to the U.S. Calculator Service Center for repair.

All shipping, reimportation arrangements, and customs costs are your responsibility.

## **Service Charge**

There is a standard repair charge for out-of-warranty service. The Calculator Service Center (listed on the inside back cover) can tell you how much this charge is. The full charge is subject to the customer's local sales or value-added tax wherever applicable.

Calculator products damaged by accident or misuse are not covered by the fixed service charges. In these cases, charges are individually determined based on time and material.

## **Shipping Instructions**

If your calculator requires service, ship it to the nearest authorized service center or collection point. Be sure to:

- Include your return address and description of the problem.
- Include proof of purchase date if the warranty has not expired.

- Include a purchase order, check, or credit card number plus expiration date (VISA or MasterCard) to cover the standard repair charge.
- Ship the calculator in adequate protective packaging to prevent damage. Such damage is not covered by the warranty, so we recommend that you insure the shipment.
- Pay the shipping charges for delivery to the Hewlett-Packard service center, whether or not the calculator is under warranty.

## Warranty on Service

Service is warranted against defects in materials and workmanship for 90 days from the date of service.

## Service Agreements

In the U.S., a support agreement is available for repair and service. Refer to the form included with the manual. For additional information, contact the Calculator Service Center (see the inside back cover).

---

## Radio Frequency Interference

**U.S.A.** The HP-42S generates and uses radio frequency energy and may interfere with radio and television reception. The calculator complies with the limits for a Class B computing device as specified in Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC Rules, which provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. In the unlikely event that there is interference to radio or television reception (which can be determined by turning the HP-42S off and on or by removing the batteries), try:

- Reorienting the receiving antenna.
- Relocating the calculator with respect to the receiver.

For more information, consult your dealer, an experienced radio/television technician, or the following booklet, prepared by the Federal Communications Commission: *How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems*. This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402, Stock Number 004-000-00345-4. At the first printing of this manual, the telephone number was (202) 783-3238.

**West Germany.** The HP-42S and the HP 82240A printer comply with VFG 1046/84, VDE 0871B, and similar non-interference standards.

If you use equipment that is not authorized by Hewlett-Packard, that system configuration has to comply with the requirements of Paragraph 2 of the German Federal Gazette, Order (VFG) 1046/84, dated December 14, 1984.



## Managing Calculator Memory

---

This appendix describes how calculator memory is organized and the techniques used internally by the calculator to conserve memory. You do not need to read and understand this material to use your calculator. However, you may find the information useful. For example, you can write your programs to take advantage of the HP-42S memory management scheme.

---

### Resetting the Calculator

If the calculator doesn't respond to keystrokes or is otherwise behaving unusually, attempt to reset it. Resetting the calculator resets many conditions to their default states (such as turning Program-entry mode off and exiting all menus). Refer to appendix C, "Flags," for a table of flag settings at machine reset.

To reset the calculator, hold down the **EXIT** key while you press the  **$\sqrt{x}$**  key. Repeat this if necessary. The calculator displays **Machine Reset** to confirm that reset has occurred.

---

### Clearing All Memory

There are two ways to clear calculator memory:

#### To clear all programs and data:

1. Press **CLEAR** **CLALL**.
2. Press **YES** to confirm or any other key to cancel.

## To clear all programs and data and reset flags:

1. Press and hold **EXIT** (lower-left corner of the keyboard).
2. Press and hold  **$\Sigma+$**  (upper-left corner of the keyboard).
3. Press and release **XEQ** (upper-right corner of the keyboard).
4. Release  **$\Sigma+$** .
5. Release **EXIT**. The calculator displays **Memory Clear**.

Continuous Memory can inadvertently be erased if the calculator is dropped or if power is interrupted.

---

## Reclaiming Memory

If you see the message **Insufficient Memory**, there is not enough memory to complete the operation that you attempted.

To determine the amount of memory available, press and hold **MEM** in the **CATALOG** menu. To reclaim memory—that is, increase the amount of available memory—do one or more of the following:

- Reduce the number of storage registers by using a smaller **SIZE** (page 64).
- Clear variables that you no longer need (page 62).
- Clear programs that you no longer need (page 119).
- Clear the stack (page 43).

---

## How the HP-42S Conserves Memory

As described in chapter 3, the HP-42S uses several types of data. Because data types can range in size (from a real number up to a large complex matrix), a sophisticated operating system has been developed that makes it easy for you to manipulate data using a consistent set of RPN rules. The techniques presented in chapter 2 for using the stack apply to all types of data. For example, when you press **ENTER**, the stack is lifted and the data in the X-register is copied into the Y-register.



# What Happens When Data Is Copied

Whenever you make a copy of data (with operations such as `ENTER`, `STO`, and `RCL`), internally the calculator *does not* actually make a complete copy even though it appears to.

**Example: Observing the Conservation of Memory.** To demonstrate this principle of copying objects, clear the stack and create a 10 × 10 matrix named *TEST*.

Create the matrix using the DIM function.

`10` `ENTER` `MATRIX` `▼` `DIM`  
`ENTER` `TEST` `ENTER` `EXIT`  
`CLEAR` `CLST`

`Y: 10.0000`  
`X: 10.0000`

`Y: 0.0000`  
`X: 0.0000`

View the amount of memory available. (Note: the memory available in your calculator will differ from the numbers shown in this example.)

`CATALOG` `MEM` (hold down)

`Available Memory:`  
`6157 Bytes`

Fill the stack with copies of *TEST*.

`RCL` `TEST`  
`ENTER` `ENTER` `ENTER`

`X: [ 10x10 Matrix ]`  
`FCN PGM REAL CPX MAT MEM`

`X: [ 10x10 Matrix ]`  
`FCN PGM REAL CPX MAT MEM`

Now, there appear to be five complete matrices in the calculator: one stored in the variable *TEST* and four in the stack. But when you view the amount of memory available, you can see that making these “copies” did not use any additional memory.

`CATALOG` `MEM` (hold down)

`Available Memory:`  
`6157 Bytes`

Internally, the HP-42S does not make copies of data until it is used. Add 2 to the matrix.

2  $\boxed{+}$

X: [ 10x10 Matrix ]					
FCN	PGM	REAL	CPX	MAT	MEM

View the amount of memory available now.

$\boxed{\text{MEM}}$  (hold down)

Available Memory: 5326 Bytes
---------------------------------

The new copy required 831 additional bytes of memory ( $6,157 - 5,326 = 831$ ).

## Writing Memory-Efficient Programs

**Use the Stack Efficiently.** Review chapter 2 and remember the rules for RPN calculations. Many complicated mathematical expressions can be evaluated using only the stack. That is, you can often complete a calculation without using *additional* variables or storage registers. For example, refer to the “TVM” program on page 192.

**Use Local Labels Whenever You Can.** If you do a lot of programming, you can save a substantial amount of memory by using local labels whenever you can. Local labels only require 1 or 2 bytes each and branch instructions to local labels never require more than 3 bytes. What’s more, the search for a local label is usually much faster than a search for a global label (page 148).

Global labels, on the other hand, require 4 bytes plus 1 byte for each character in the label. Each branch instruction to a global label (GTO and XEQ) requires 2 bytes plus 1 byte for each character in the label.

**During Matrix Arithmetic.** During some calculations with matrices, you can save memory by putting the smaller matrix or scalar in the X-register before executing a numeric function.

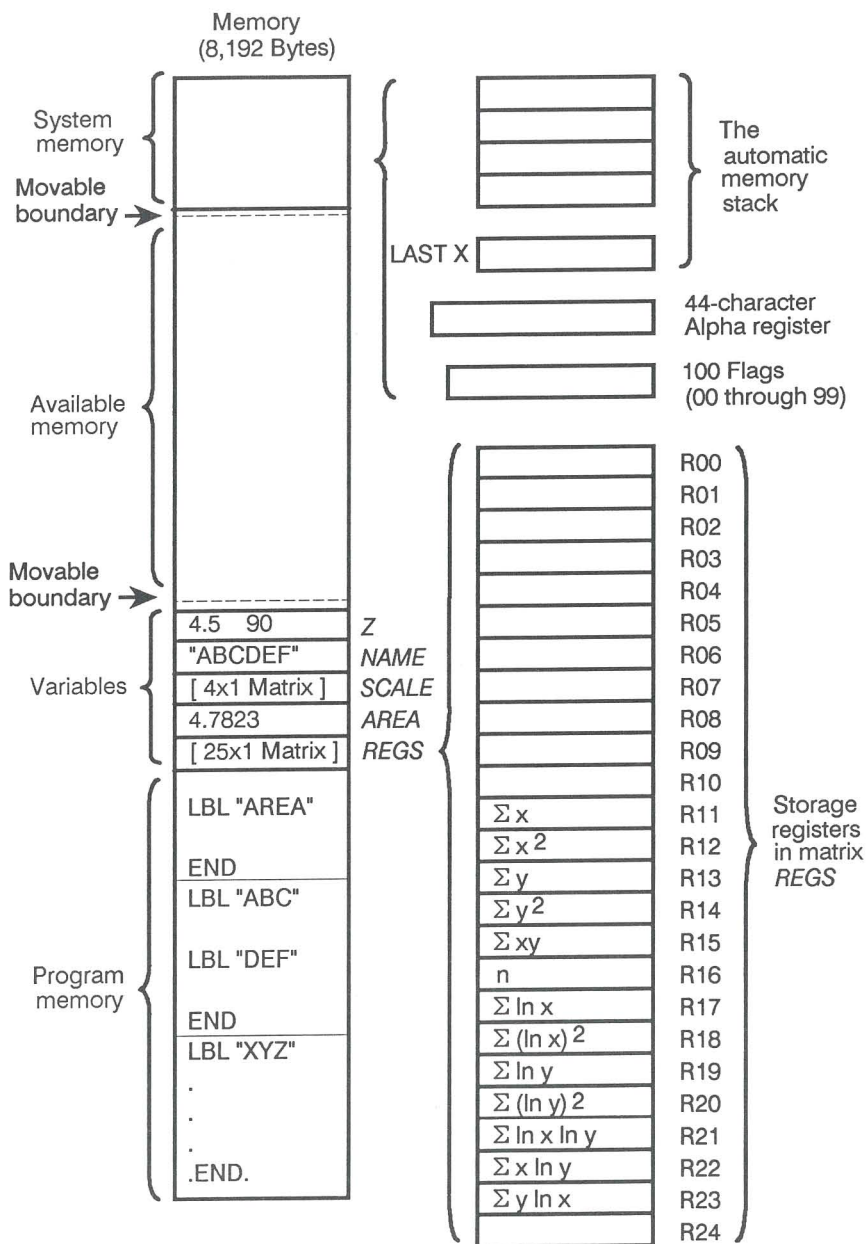
For example, if you are adding a scalar to a matrix, put the scalar in the X-register. Then, when you execute  $\boxed{+}$ , the scalar (which uses less memory) gets saved in the LAST X register rather than the matrix.

Note that this technique does not reduce the amount of memory needed to perform the calculation—the calculator still uses a temporary workspace to calculate the result. However, it does increase the amount of memory available immediately after the calculation.

---

## Memory Organization


The diagram on the next page illustrates how calculator memory is organized internally. *Available memory* is the unused portion of memory between the memory used for the stack (and other system memory) and the memory used to store variables and programs.



## Flags

---

The HP-42S uses 100 flags (numbered 00–99) to keep track of various modes, settings, and conditions. A flag has only two states: *set* and *clear*. Flags are set, cleared, and tested using the functions in the FLAGS menu (page 41).

Flags that represent certain conditions may change in the course of operation. For example, when you press  **CUSTOM** to select the CUSTOM menu, flag 27 is set. When you exit from the CUSTOM menu, flag 27 is cleared.

Flags not listed in this appendix are either used internally or are reserved for future use.

---

### User Flags (00 Through 10 and 81 Through 99)

The 30 *user flags* can be used to represent anything you want. For example, the “TVM” program on page 192 uses flag 00. If flag 00 is set, the program assumes payments are made at the beginning of each month; if flag 00 is clear, payments are made at the end of each month.

---

### Control Flags (11 Through 35)

Control flags are used by the HP-42S to represent certain operating conditions. Some conditions are controlled only by altering flags, while others are changed by executing functions.

**Flag 11: Automatic Execution.** Flag 11 (if set before the calculator is turned off) allows a program to run automatically when the HP-42S is turned on. If flag 11 is set when you turn the HP-42S on, flag 11 is cleared, and program execution begins at the current program line.

**Flag 12: Double-Wide Printer Output.** If flag 12 is set, all printer output is printed double-wide.

**Flag 13: Lowercase Printer Output.** If flag 13 is set, the letters A through Z are printed in lowercase.

**Flags 15 and 16: Print Mode.** This table shows how flags 15 and 16 represent the current print mode.

Flag 15	Flag 16	Print Mode
clear	clear	Manual
clear	set	Normal
set	clear or set	Trace

**Flag 21: Printer Enable.** Flag 21 allows your program to control how the functions VIEW and AVIEW are executed. For more information, refer to "Printing With VIEW and AVIEW" on page 132.

**Flags 22 and 23: Data Input.** These flags allow a program that prompts for input to determine the user's response. Flag 22 is set whenever numbers are keyed into the X-register. Flag 23 is set whenever characters are keyed into the Alpha register.

If you intend to test these flags to determine if input has been made, you should clear them before prompting for the input.

**Flags 24 and 25: Error Ignore.** Normally, an error condition halts program execution. These flags allow you to avoid unnecessary program halts and to use error conditions as a programming tool.



- If flag 24 is set, the HP-42S ignores *all* range errors. **Out of Range** normally results from any calculation (except statistical accumulations) that produces a number  $x$  such that  $|x| > 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ . If flag 24 is set,  $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$  is returned as an approximation to the correct answer and program execution continues. Once you set flag 24, it remains set until you explicitly clear it.

Flag 24 can also be used to ignore range errors produced by the 36-bit arithmetic functions (BASE+, BASE−, BASE×, and BASE÷), substituting the largest 36-bit number for an approximation to the correct answer (pages 248 and 249).

You do not need to set flag 24 to prevent overflow errors when accumulating statistical data ( $\Sigma+$ ) or using two-number functions on matrices. In these cases the calculator automatically returns  $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$  when a result exceeds the range of the calculator.

- If flag 25 is set, the calculator ignores *only one* error of any kind and then clears flag 25. The instruction that caused the error is not executed.

If both flags 24 and 25 are set, **Out of Range** is handled by flag 24—flag 25 is *not* cleared. Note that if flag 25 is set and flag 24 is clear, **Out of Range** does *not* cause  $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$  to be placed in the appropriate register.

You can detect an error by setting flag 25 just before an instruction and then testing the flag after the instruction to see if it has been cleared. (Generally, you should test *and clear* flag 25—you risk losing data if you choose to ignore unanticipated errors.) This enables a program to branch rather than to stop execution in case of an error.

**Flag 26: Audio Enable.** When flag 26 is set, the BEEP and TONE functions *will* produce audible tones. You can toggle flag 26 by executing the QUIET function in the MODES menu.

**Flag 27: The CUSTOM Menu.** Flag 27 is set whenever the CUSTOM menu is displayed. The status of flag 27 is not altered by turning the calculator off and on. Refer also to flag 72.

**Flags 28 and 29: Display Punctuation.** These flags control the use of periods and commas in numeric displays.



- If flag 28 is set (*default*), a period is used as the radix mark (to separate the integer portion of a number from the fractional part). If flag 28 is clear, a comma is used as the radix mark.
- If flag 29 is set (*default*), groups of digits in large numbers are separated. If flag 29 is clear, no digit separators are used. The character used to separate digits is a comma if the radix is a period, and a period if the radix is a comma.

If the display format is set to FIX 0 and flag 29 is clear, the integer portion of the number is displayed without any punctuation.

**Flag 30: Stack Lift Disable.** This flag is cleared by nearly all functions. The functions that set flag 30 are ENTER, CLX,  $\Sigma+$ , and  $\Sigma-$ . If stack lift is disabled (flag 30 set), the next number keyed or recalled into the X-register writes over the current contents of the X-register (pages 45 through 46).

**Flags 34 and 35: AGRAPH Control.** The status of these two flags determines how a graphics image is displayed by the AGRAPH function. When both flags are clear (default), the image is merged with the existing contents of the display (logical OR). Refer to the table on page 137.

---

## System Flags (36 Through 80)

The HP-42S uses system flags to keep track of a number of options and conditions. You cannot directly alter system flags. You can, however, test system flags, which might be useful in programs to detect particular options and conditions.

### Flags That Represent Options

**Flags 36 Through 41: Display Format.** These flags represent the current display format. The calculator reads flags 36 through 39 as a four-bit binary number that specifies the number of digits to display. For example, the default format calls for 4 digits (flag 37 set; flags 36, 38, and 39 clear). That is, 0100 (binary) = 4 (decimal).

36	37	38	39
0	1	0	0

Flags 40 and 41 are used to represent the display format (FIX, SCI, ENG, or ALL).

Flag 40	Flag 41	Display Format
Clear	Clear	SCI
Clear	Set	ENG
Set	Clear	FIX (default)
Set	Set	ALL

**Flags 42 and 43: Angular Mode.** The status of flags 42 and 43 determines the angular mode (Degrees, Radians, or Grads). If flag 42 is set (**GRAD** on), the calculator is in Grads mode. If flag 43 is set (**RAD** on), the calculator is in Radians mode. If both flags are clear (default), the calculator is in Degrees mode.

**Flags 56 Through 59: Curve-Fitting Model.** These flags are used to indicate the current curve-fitting model. Only one of these four flags can be set at a time.

Flag	Curve-Fitting Model
56	Linear (default)
57	Logarithmic
58	Exponential
59	Power

**Flag 60: AllΣ Mode.** If flag 60 is set (AllΣ mode), the calculator uses all 13 summation coefficients for statistical calculations. If flag 60 is clear (Linear mode), the calculator uses only the six coefficients needed for linear curve fitting.

**Flag 66: Grow Mode.** If flag 66 is set, a matrix automatically grows by one complete row if you execute the → or J+ function while positioned at the last element in the matrix.

**Flags 68 Through 71: Base Mode.** If the current base mode is Decimal, all four of these flags are clear. In nondecimal modes, these flags are used as a four-bit number indicating the largest digit allowed in the current mode.

Base Mode	Flags				Largest Digit
	71	70	69	68	
Binary	0	0	0	1	1
Octal	0	1	1	1	7
Hexadecimal	1	1	1	1	F

**Flag 72: Local Label Mode (CUSTOM).** The calculator tests this flag before displaying the CUSTOM menu. (Refer to the menu maps on page 301). If flag 72 is set, the CUSTOM menu for executing local Alpha labels is displayed. If flag 72 is clear, the CUSTOM menu key assignments are displayed. Making a key assignment automatically clears flag 72.

To set flag 72, press  **MODES**  **LCLBL** (*Local-label mode*). To clear flag 72, press  **MODES**  **KEY** (*Key-assignment mode*).


**Flag 73: Polar Mode.** If flag 73 is set, the calculator displays complex numbers using polar notation.

**Flag 74: Real-Result Only.** If flag 74 is set, the calculator returns an error for functions that would turn a real-number input into a complex-number result (such as calculating the square root of a negative real number). Refer to page 169.

## Flags That Represent Conditions

**Flag 44: Continuous On.** Flag 44 is set when the ON (*continuous on*) function is executed. The calculator automatically turns off after about 10 minutes of inactivity (no keys pressed) unless flag 44 is set.

**Flag 45: Solving.** Flag 45 is set only while the Solver is calculating a solution.

- Flag 46: Integrating.** Flag 46 is set only while the Integration applicaton is evaluating an integral.
- Flag 47: Variable Menu.** Flag 47 is only set when a variable menu is active (page 125).
- Flag 48: Alpha Mode.** Whenever the calculator is in Alpha mode (ALPHA menu and Alpha register displayed), flag 48 is set. You can control Alpha mode by executing AON (*Alpha on*; sets flag 48) and AOFF (*Alpha off*; clears flag 48).
- Flag 49: Low Battery Power.** Flag 49 is set and the  annunciator is displayed when battery power is low. Refer to page 258 for information on replacing batteries.
- Flags 50 and 51: Message.** Flag 50 is set whenever a message is displayed. If the message uses both lines of the display, flag 51 is also set.
- Flag 52: Program-Entry Mode.** Whenever the calculator is in Program-entry mode, flag 52 is set.
- Flag 53: INPUT.** Flag 53 is set only while an INPUT is in progress (page 121). Note that the INPUT function cannot be executed from the keyboard.
- Flag 55: Printer Existence.** Executing the PRON (*printing on*) function enables printing by setting flags 21 and 55. Executing PROFF (*printing off*) disables printing and clears flags 21 and 55.
- In general, flag 55 indicates if printing is *possible*. Flag 21 indicates if printing is *desired*.
- Flags 61 Through 63: Invalid Models.** These flags are used during entry of statistical data to identify which curve-fitting models are invalid.

Flag	Invalid Model (if set)
61	Logarithmic
62	Exponential
63	Power

**Flag 65: Matrix Editor.** Flag 65 is set if the Matrix Editor is in use.

**Flag 75: Programmable Menu Selected.** If flag 75 is set, the programmable menu (page 145) is selected. The MENU function sets flag 75.

**Flags 76 and 77: Matrix Wrap.** These flags are updated each time you execute any of the matrix functions that alter the row and column pointers.

- If the function causes the pointers to be wrapped from one edge of the matrix to the opposite edge (*edge wrap*), flag 76 is set. Otherwise the flag is cleared.
- If the function causes the pointers to be wrapped from the first element to the last or from the last element to the first (*end wrap*), then flag 77 is set. Otherwise, the flag is cleared.

---

## Summary of HP-42S Flags

The following table lists all of the flags used by the HP-42S. *Status at Machine Reset* indicates if the flag is set or cleared when you reset the calculator. *Status at Memory Clear* indicates if the flag is set or cleared when you erase all of memory. An M indicates that the current status of the flag is *maintained* (not changed). A ? indicates that the status of the flag depends on other factors.

Flag Number	Flag Name	Status at Machine Reset	Status at Memory Clear
00–10	User Flags	M	Clear
11	Automatic Execution	Clear	Clear
12	Print Double-Wide	M	Clear
13	Print Lowercase	M	Clear
14	Reserved	M	Clear
15–16	Print Mode	M	Clear
17–18	Reserved	M	Clear

Flag Number	Flag Name	Status at Machine Reset	Status at Memory Clear
19–20	General Use	M	Clear
21	Printer Enable	M	Clear
22	Numeric Data Input	Clear	Clear
23	Alpha Data Input	Clear	Clear
24	Range Error Ignore	Clear	Clear
25	Error Ignore	Clear	Clear
26	Audio Enable	M	Clear
27	CUSTOM Menu	Clear	Clear
28	Radix Mark (. or ,)	M	Clear
29	Digit Separators	M	Clear
30	Stack Lift Disable	Clear	Clear
31–33	Reserved	?	?
34–35	AGRAPH Control	M	Clear
36–39	Number of Digits	M	4 Digits*
40–41	Display Format	M	FIX*
42	Grads Mode	M	Clear
43	Radians Mode	M	Clear
44	Continuous On	Clear	Clear
45	Solving	Clear	Clear
46	Integrating	Clear	Clear
47	Variable Menu	Clear	Clear
48	Alpha Mode	Clear	Clear
49	Low Battery	?	?
50	Message	Set	Set
51	Two-Line Message	Clear	Clear
52	Program-Entry	Clear	Clear
53	INPUT	Clear	Clear

\* Refer to the description on page 276.




Flag Number	Flag Name	Status at Machine Reset	Status at Memory Clear
54	Reserved	Clear	Clear
55	Printer Existence	M	Clear
56	Linear Curve-Fitting Model	M	Set
57	Logarithmic Curve-Fitting Model	M	Clear
58	Exponential Curve-Fitting Model	M	Clear
59	Power Curve-Fitting Model	M	Clear
60	AllΣ Mode (statistics)	M	Set
61	Logarithmic Model Invalid	M	Clear
62	Exponential Model Invalid	M	Clear
63	Power Model Invalid	M	Clear
64	Reserved	M	Clear
65	Matrix Editor	Clear	Clear
66	Grow Mode	Clear	Clear
67	Reserved	Clear	Clear
68–71	Base Mode	Clear	Clear
72	Local-Label Mode (CUSTOM)	M	Clear
73	Polar Mode	M	Clear
74	Real-Result Only	M	Clear
75	Programmable Menu Active	Clear	Clear
76	Edge Wrap	M	Clear
77	End Wrap	M	Clear
78–80	Reserved	M	Clear
81–99	User Flags	M	Clear



## Messages

---

The HP-42S displays messages to provide information and to warn you when you attempt an invalid operation. The message disappears when you press a key. To clear the message without altering anything else, press .

### Alpha Data Is Invalid

Attempted an operation using a variable, storage register, or stack register containing an Alpha string.

### Bad Guess(es)

Guess(es) provided for the Solver are outside the domain of the function.

### Batt Too Low To Print

The battery voltage is too low to power the calculator's infrared printer interface. Whenever the calculator displays this message, it also resets to Manual printing mode.

### Constant?

The function returned the same value at every point sampled by the Solver.

### Dimension Error

- Dimensions of two matrices are not compatible for matrix arithmetic.
- Attempted to calculate the determinant of a nonsquare matrix.
- Attempted to create a matrix with one or both dimensions less than or equal to zero.
- Attempted to move the index pointers beyond the dimensions of the indexed matrix.

#### **Divide by 0**

Attempted to divide by zero.

#### **Extremum**

Local minimum or maximum has been found by the Solver.

#### **Global Span**

Attempted to insert or delete a program line that would have left more than 3,584 bytes of program instructions between two global labels or a global label and an END.

#### **Insufficient Memory**

There is not enough memory to complete the attempted operation. In addition to the memory needed to complete the operation, the calculator always keeps some memory available as a system work space.

#### **Integ(Integ)**

Attempted to integrate a function while another integration was in progress.

#### **Integrating**

The calculator is calculating an integral (chapter 13).

#### **Interrupted**

A matrix operation has been interrupted by pressing **EXIT**.

#### **Invalid Data**

Attempted a function using data outside the range of the function.

#### **Invalid Forecast Model**

The current statistical data is invalid or incomplete to use the selected curve-fitting model for forecasting.

#### **Invalid Type**

Data type does not match the type expected (real, complex, or matrix).

#### **Label Not Found**

Attempted an instruction that referenced a program label that does not exist.

### Machine Reset



The calculator has been reset (page 267):

- All menus are exited.
- Program-entry mode is exited.
- All pending RTN locations are cleared.
- The display contrast is set to a middle setting.

### Memory Clear

All of continuous memory has been cleared (page 268).

### No

The proposition made by a test function executed from the keyboard is false. For example, the calculator displays No if you press  **FLAGS**  03 when flag 03 is clear.



### No Complex Variables

There are no variables in the complex-variable catalog.

### No Matrix Variables

There are no variables in the matrix-variable catalog.

### No Menu Variables

Attempted to display a variable menu with VARMENU,  **SOLVER**, or  **f(x)** using a global label that is not followed by MVAR (*menu variable*) instructions.

### No Real Variables

There are no variables in the real-variable catalog.

### No Variables

Attempted to execute a function that requires a variable name as a parameter and there are no variables currently stored in the calculator.




### Nonexistent

- Attempted to use a variable that does not exist.
- Attempted a matrix utility function when there is no indexed matrix.

### Out of Range

The result of the attempted operation would exceed the numeric range of the calculator. You can use flag 24 to ignore this error.

### Printing Is Disabled

A print operation was attempted from the keyboard with printing disabled (flag 55 clear). To enable printing, press  **PRINT**   **PON** .

### Restricted Operation

- Attempted to set or clear a flag in the range 36 through 80.
- Attempted to use a function from the keyboard that can only be used in programs.
- Attempted to enter a nonprogrammable function into a program.
- Attempted to store a number into REGS. The variable name REGS can only be used to store a matrix.
- Attempted to redimension, index, or clear the named matrix currently being edited.
- Attempted to execute the DEL (*delete*) function while not in Program-entry mode.
- Attempted to delete a row (DELR) in a matrix that has only one row.

### Sign Reversal

An approximation to a solution has been found by the Solver but it may not be a normal solution.

### Size Error

- Attempted to store or recall a storage register that does not exist.
- Attempted a statistical function when one or more of the summation registers do not exist.

### Solve/Integ RTN Lost

The RTN (*return*) location for the Solver or Integration was lost. The calculator can remember up to eight pending return locations.


Solve(Solve)

Attempted to solve a function while another solve was in progress.

Stat Math Error

The statistical data is invalid or incomplete.


Yes

The proposition made by a test function executed from the keyboard is true. For example, the calculator displays **Yes** if you press  **FLAGS**

 **FS?** 03 when flag 03 is set.























### Note

The HP-42S uses <Too Big> in the Base application to display any number that is too big to display using a nondecimal base mode. That is, <Too Big> is a number, *not an error message*. Refer to page 249. To view a number that is displayed as <Too Big>, press and hold  **SHOW**.

---

## Character Table

The following table lists all of the Alpha characters used by the HP-42S. The keystrokes shown in the table assume that the first or second row of the ALPHA menu is displayed (  ALPHA or  ALPHA  ).

Display Character	Character Code		Keystrokes*
	Dec	Hex	
÷	0	00	 ÷
×	1	01	 ×
√	2	02	MATH  √
∫	3	03	MATH  ∫
Σ	4	04	
Σ	5	05	MATH  Σ
►	6	06	
π	7	07	 π
∂	8	08	PUNC  ∂
≤	9	09	< = >  ≤
↳	10	0A	PUNC  ↳
≥	11	0B	< = >  ≥
≠	12	0C	< = >  ≠
↵	13	0D	
↓	14	0E	← ↑ ↓  ↓
→	15	0F	← ↑ ↓  →
←	16	10	← ↑ ↓  ←
μ	17	11	MATH  μ
£	18	12	MISC  £
¤	19	13	MATH  ¤

\* If a character is not typable (no keystrokes) you can enter it into the Alpha register by keying the character code into the X-register and then executing the XTOA function.

Display Character	Character Dec	Code Hex	Keystrokes*
À	20	14	ABCDE ▼ A
Ã	21	15	NOPQ ▼ Ñ
Ä	22	16	ABCDE ▼ Ä
Å	23	17	MATH < Å
Æ	24	18	E
Ë	25	19	ABCDE ▼ Ë
…	26	1A	PUNC ▼ …
€	27	1B	
Ö	28	1C	NOPQ ▼ Ö
Ü	29	1D	RSTUV ▼ Ü
×	30	1E	
■	31	1F	MISC ■
(space)	32	20	WXYZ
!	33	21	PUNC !
"	34	22	PUNC "
#	35	23	MISC #
\$	36	24	MISC \$
%	37	25	%
&	38	26	MISC ▼ &
'	39	27	PUNC ▼ '
<	40	28	< [ <
>	41	29	< [ >
*	42	2A	MISC *
+	43	2B	+
,	44	2C	PUNC ,
-	45	2D	-
.	46	2E	.
/	47	2F	MISC /
0	48	30	0
1	49	31	1
2	50	32	2
3	51	33	3
4	52	34	4
5	53	35	5
6	54	36	6
7	55	37	7
8	56	38	8
9	57	39	9
:	58	3A	PUNC :

\* If a character is not typable (no keystrokes) you can enter it into the Alpha register by keying the character code into the X-register and then executing the XTOA function.



Display Character	Character Code Dec	Character Code Hex	Keystrokes	
;	59	3B	PUNC	;
<	60	3C	< = >	<
=	61	3D	< = >	=
>	62	3E	< = >	>
?	63	3F	PUNC	?
@	64	40	MISC	▼ @
A	65	41	ABCDE	A
B	66	42	ABCDE	B
C	67	43	ABCDE	C
D	68	44	ABCDE	D
E	69	45	ABCDE	E
F	70	46	FGHI	F
G	71	47	FGHI	G
H	72	48	FGHI	H
I	73	49	FGHI	I
J	74	4A	JKLM	J
K	75	4B	JKLM	K
L	76	4C	JKLM	L
M	77	4D	JKLM	M
N	78	4E	NOPQ	N
O	79	4F	NOPQ	O
P	80	50	NOPQ	P
Q	81	51	NOPQ	Q
R	82	52	RSTUV	R
S	83	53	RSTUV	S
T	84	54	RSTUV	T
U	85	55	RSTUV	U
V	86	56	RSTUV	V
W	87	57	WXYZ	W
X	88	58	WXYZ	X
Y	89	59	WXYZ	Y
Z	90	5A	WXYZ	Z
[	91	5B	< [ <	[
\	92	5C	MISC	▼ \
]	93	5D	< ] <	]
↑	94	5E	↑↑↑	↑
-	95	5F	PUNC	▼ -
`	96	60	PUNC	▼ `
a	97	61	ABCDE	A
b	98	62	ABCDE	B
c	99	63	ABCDE	C
d	100	64	ABCDE	D

Display Character	Character Code Dec	Hex	Keystrokes*
e	101	65	ABCDE E
f	102	66	FGHI F
g	103	67	FGHI G
h	104	68	FGHI H
i	105	69	FGHI I
j	106	6A	JKLM J
k	107	6B	JKLM K
l	108	6C	JKLM L
m	109	6D	JKLM M
n	110	6E	NOPQ N
o	111	6F	NOPQ O
p	112	70	NOPQ P
q	113	71	NOPQ Q
r	114	72	RSTUV R
s	115	73	RSTUV S
t	116	74	RSTUV T
u	117	75	RSTUV U
v	118	76	RSTUV V
w	119	77	WXYZ W
x	120	78	WXYZ X
y	121	79	WXYZ Y
z	122	7A	WXYZ Z
{	123	7B	< [ { >
	124	7C	MISC ▼ I
}	125	7D	< [ { >
~	126	7E	MISC ▼ ~
␣	127	7F	ENTER†
:	128	80	
Y	129	81	

The display characters for character codes 130–255 (HEX82–FF) are identical to the display characters for codes 2–127.

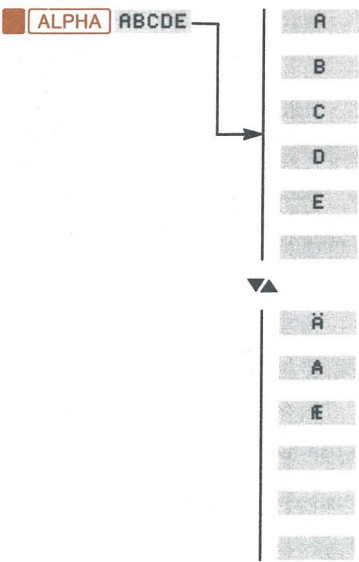
\* If a character is not typable (no keystrokes) you can enter it into the Alpha register by keying the character code into the X-register and then executing the XTOA function.

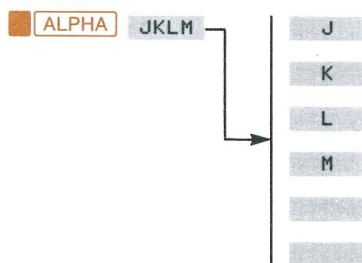
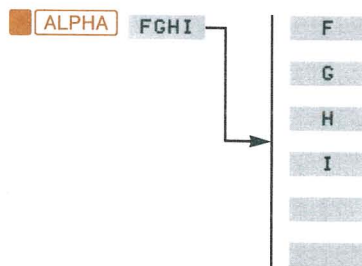
† The append character ␣ cannot be typed directly into the Alpha register. However, in Program-entry mode this character can be entered to specify an *appended* Alpha string: press ALPHA ENTER (page 130).

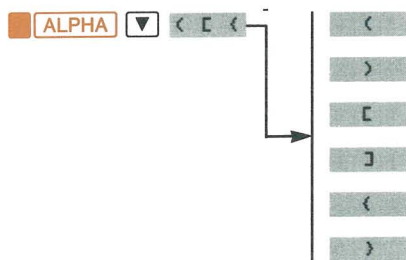
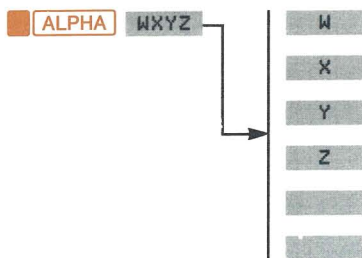
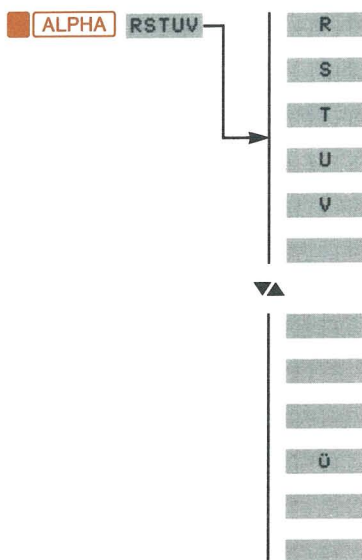
# Menu Maps

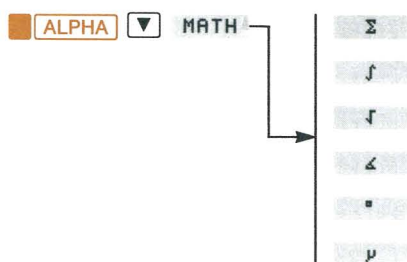
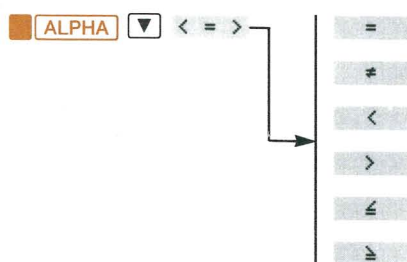
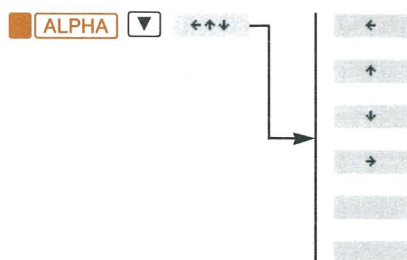
## The ALPHA Submenus

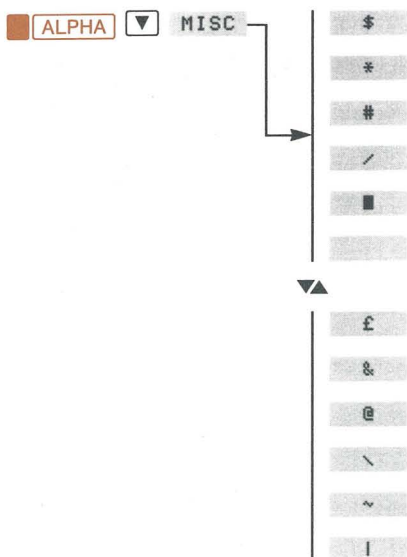
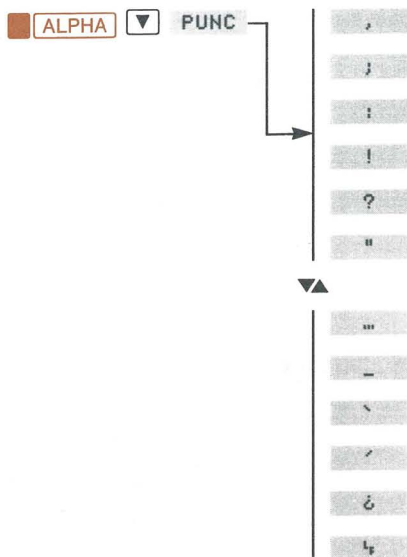
The following submenus are all part of the ALPHA menu. Refer to the menu map on page 38 for a more general view of the ALPHA menu.





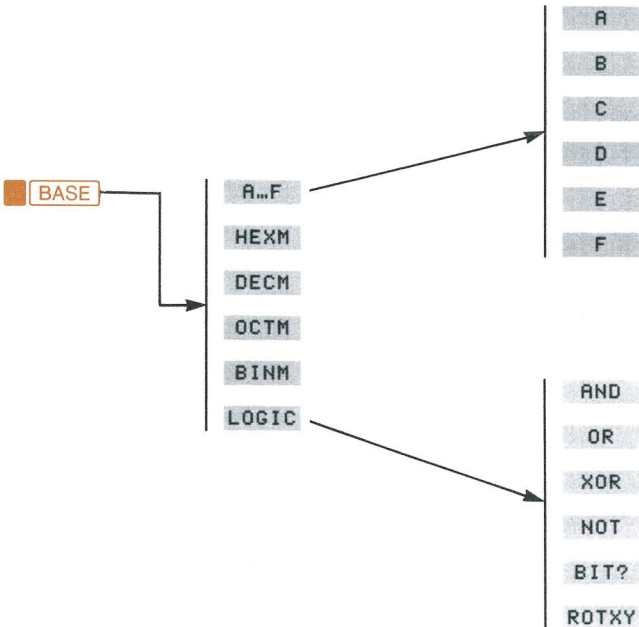




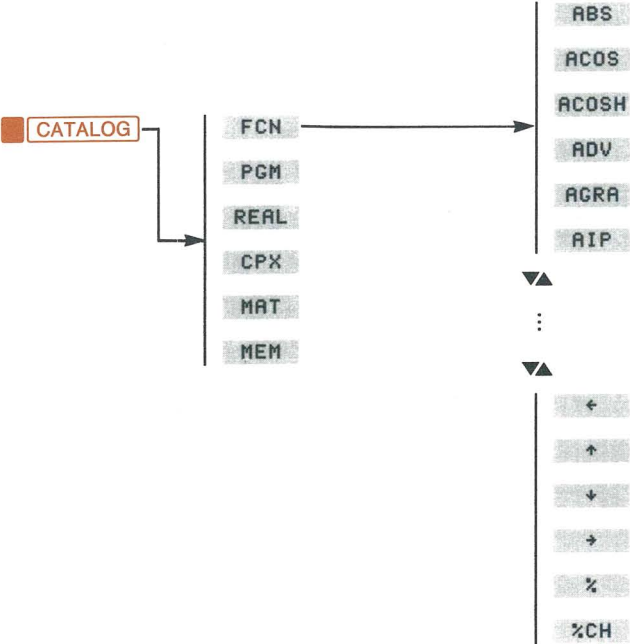




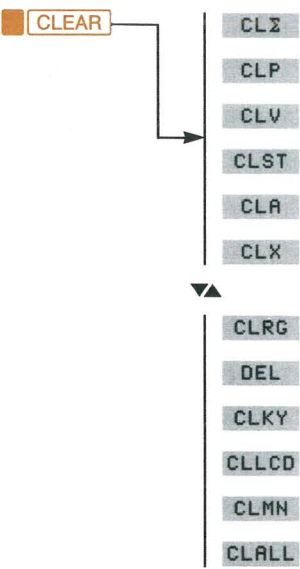
# The BASE Menu



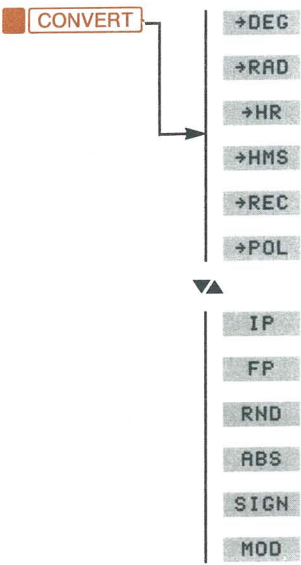
# The CATALOG Menu



# The CLEAR Menu

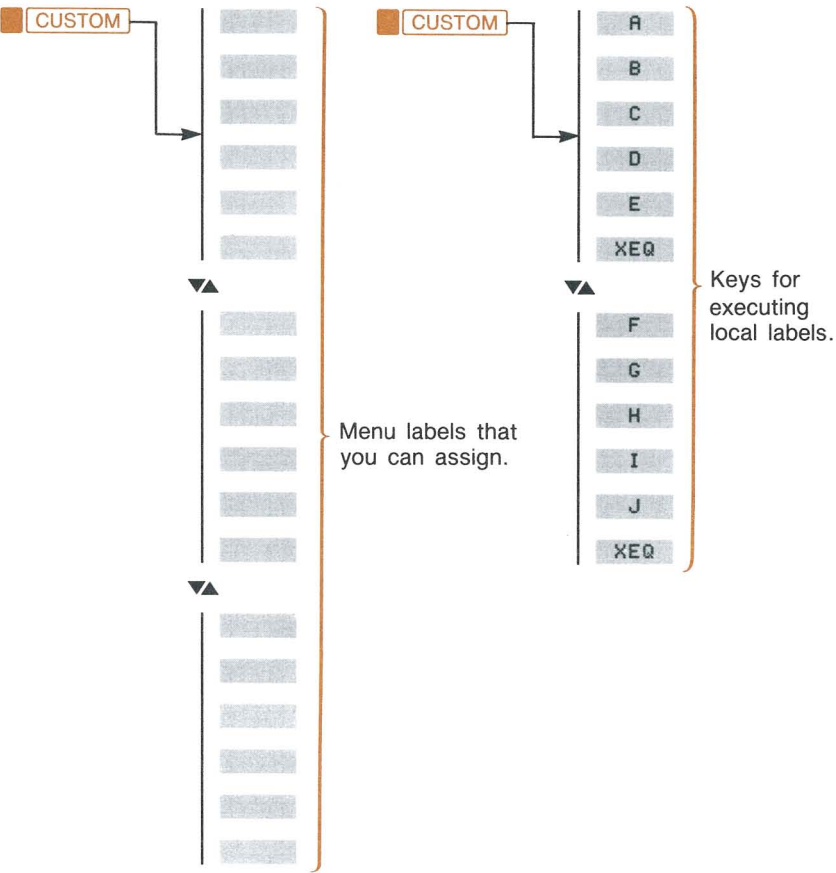


# The CONVERT Menu

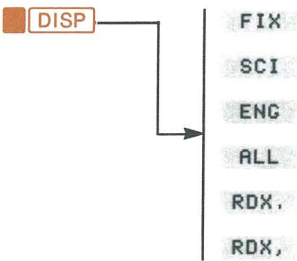


# The CUSTOM Menu

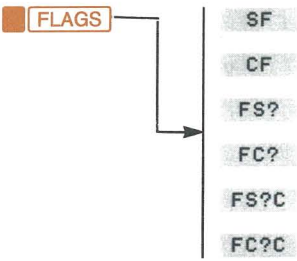
In Key-Assignments Mode      In Local-Label Mode



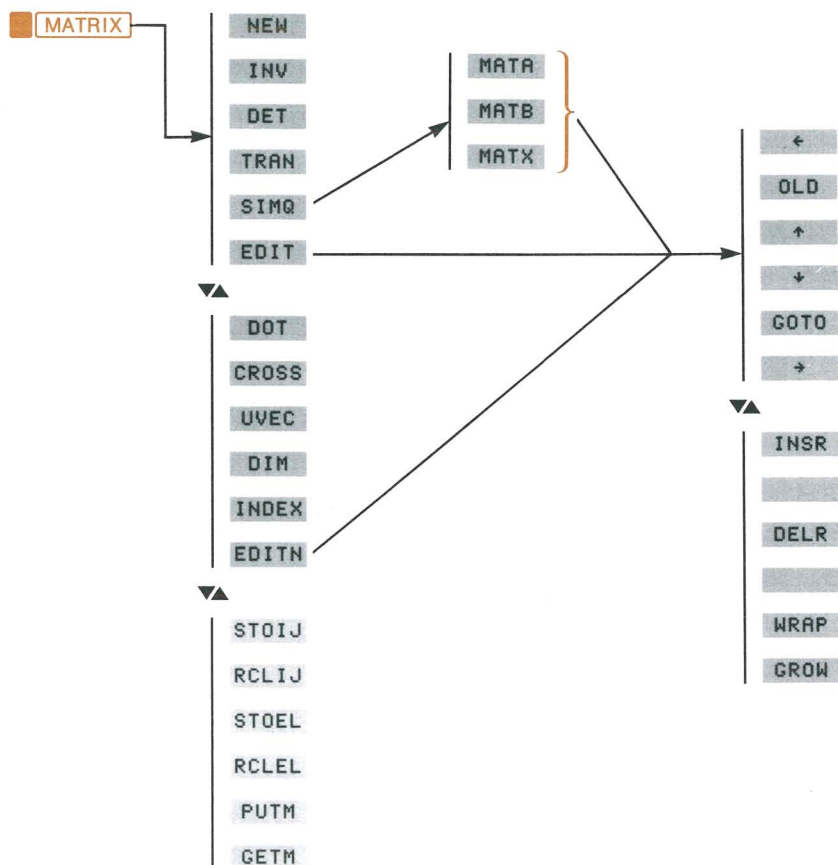
# The DISP Menu



# The FLAGS Menu

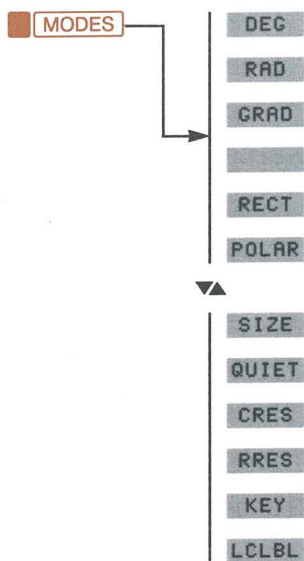


## The MATRIX Menu

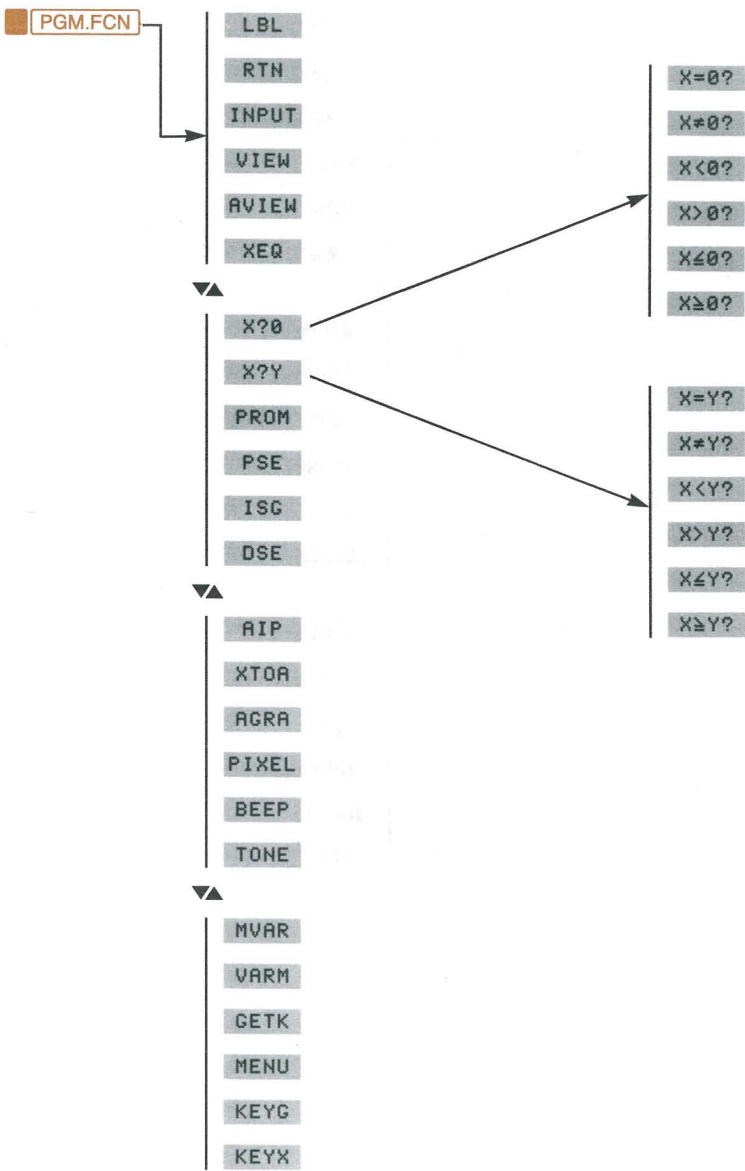




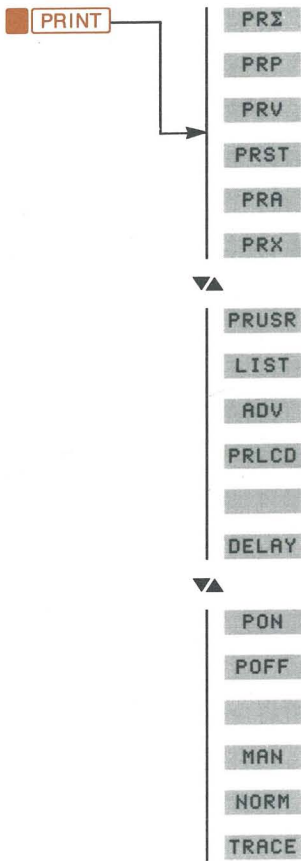
## The MODES Menu



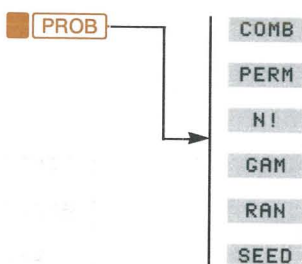
# The PGM.FCN Menu



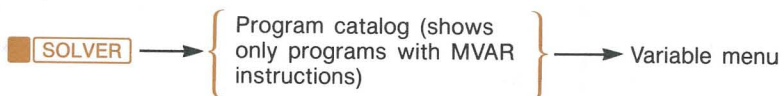
# The PRINT Menu



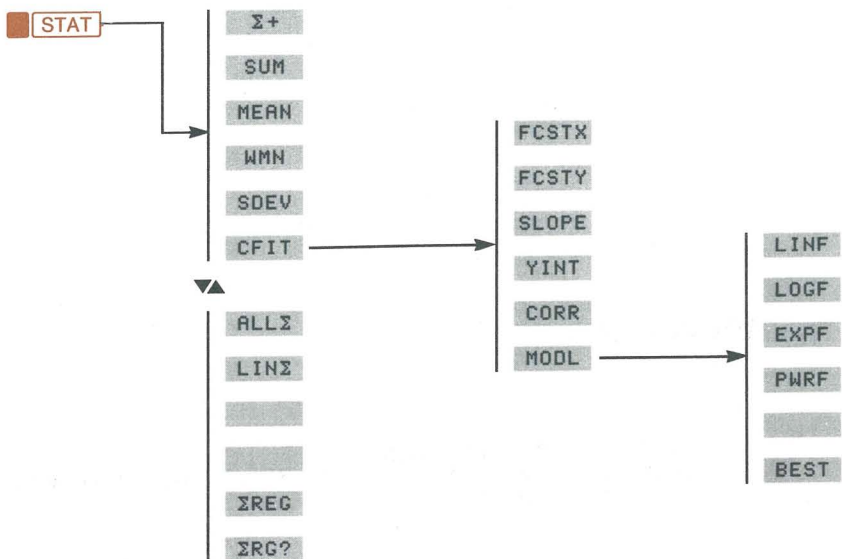
## The PROB Menu



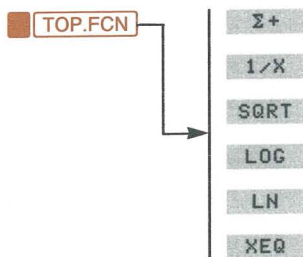
## The SOLVER Menu



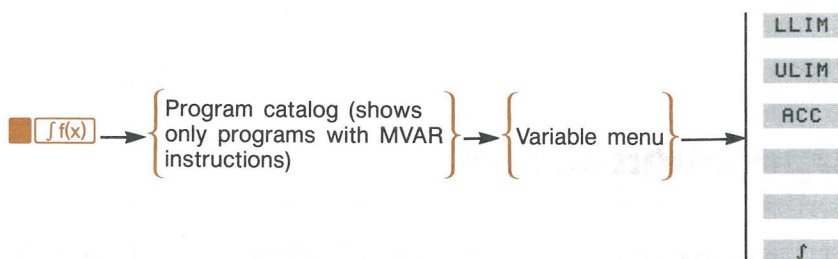
## The STAT Menu



## The TOP.FCN Menu



## The $\int f(x)$ Menu






# Operation Index








This index contains basic information and references for all HP-42S functions and keys.

**Function Names.** The entries in this index are listed alphabetically (with special characters at the end). This is the same order used in the function catalog.



























Note that this index uses the *full Alpha name* for each function. Because menu labels are limited to five characters (or fewer), some function names are abbreviated when they appear in a menu label.

**Keystrokes.** Keystrokes are included for functions that are on the keyboard or in menus. If no keystrokes are shown for a particular function, use the function catalog (  CATALOG  FCN ) or  XEQ to execute the function (page 67).

**Parameters.** Parameters are described for those functions that require a parameter. The entry also indicates if the parameter can be specified using indirect addressing.

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
ABS	<i>Absolute value.</i> Returns $ x $ . Keys:  CONVERT   ABS	86
ACOS	<i>Arc cosine.</i> Returns $\cos^{-1} x$ . Keys:  ACOS	82
ACOSH	<i>Arc hyperbolic cosine.</i> Returns $\cosh^{-1} x$ .	89
ADV	<i>Advances the printer paper one line.</i> Keys:  PRINT   ADV	101



Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
AGRAPH	<i>Alpha graphics.</i> Displays a graphics image. Each character in the Alpha register specifies an 8-dot column pattern. The X- and Y-registers specify the pixel location of the image. Keys:     	136
AIP	<i>Appends integer part of x</i> to the Alpha register. Keys:     	133
ALENG	<i>Alpha length.</i> Returns the number of characters in the Alpha register.	135
ALL	Selects the <i>All</i> display format. Keys:   	36
ALLΣ	Selects <i>AllΣ</i> ( <i>All-statistics</i> ) mode, which uses 13 summation coefficients. Keys:    	233
 	Selects the ALPHA menu for typing characters.	37
AND	Logical <i>AND</i> . Returns $x \text{ AND } y$ . Keys:    	250
AOFF	<i>Alpha off.</i> Exits from the ALPHA menu.	157
AON	<i>Alpha on.</i> Selects the ALPHA menu.	156
ARCL	<i>Alpha recall.</i> Copies data into the Alpha register appending it to the current contents. Numbers are formatted using the current display format. Key:  ( <i>when Alpha mode is on</i> ) Parameter: register or variable      Indirect: Yes	133
AROT	<i>Alpha rotate.</i> Rotates the Alpha register by the number of characters specified in the X-register.	135
ASHF	<i>Alpha shift.</i> Shifts the six left-most characters out of the Alpha register.	135
ASIN	<i>Arc sine.</i> Returns $\sin^{-1} x$ . Keys:  	82

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
ASINH	<i>Arc hyperbolic sine.</i> Returns $\sinh^{-1} x$ .	89
ASSIGN	Assigns a function, program, or variable to a menu key in the CUSTOM menu. Keys: <b>ASSIGN</b> Parameters: refer to the table on page 72.	68
ASTO	<i>Alpha store.</i> Copies the first six characters in the Alpha register into a register or variable. Key: <b>STO</b> (when Alpha mode is on) Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	132
ATAN	<i>Arc tangent.</i> Returns $\tan^{-1} x$ . Keys: <b>ATAN</b>	82
ATANH	<i>Arc hyperbolic tangent.</i> Returns $\tanh^{-1} x$ .	89
ATOX	<i>Alpha to X.</i> Converts the left-most character in the Alpha register to its character code (returned to the X-register) and deletes the character.	134
AVIEW	<i>Alpha view.</i> Displays the Alpha register. Keys: <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>RVIEW</b>	129
<b>BASE</b>	Selects the BASE menu.	245
BASE +	<i>Base addition.</i> Returns the 36-bit sum of $y + x$ . Key: <b>BASE</b> <b>+</b>	249
BASE −	<i>Base subtraction.</i> Returns the 36-bit difference of $y - x$ . Key: <b>BASE</b> <b>−</b>	249
BASE ×	<i>Base multiplication.</i> Returns the 36-bit product of $y \times x$ . Key: <b>BASE</b> <b>×</b>	249
BASE ÷	<i>Base division.</i> Returns the 36-bit quotient of $y \div x$ . Key: <b>BASE</b> <b>÷</b>	249























Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
BASE+/-	Base change sign. Returns the 36-bit 2's complement of x. Key:	249
BEEP	Sounds a sequence of four tones. Keys:	24
BEST	Selects the <i>best</i> curve-fitting model for the current statistical data. Keys:	240
BINM	Selects <i>Binary mode</i> (base 2). Keys:	245
BIT?	Tests the $x^{\text{th}}$ bit of $y$ . If the bit is set (1), executes the next program line; if the bit is clear (0), skips the next program line. Keys:	250
BST	<i>Back step</i> . Moves the program pointer to the previous program line. (Not programmable.) Keys:  (or  if no menu is displayed)	111
CF	<i>Clears flag nn</i> ( $00 \leq nn \leq 35$ ; $81 \leq nn \leq 99$ ). Keys: Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes	41
	Selects the CATALOG menu.	40
CLA	<i>Clears Alpha register</i> . If Alpha mode is on and character entry is terminated (no cursor displayed), then  also executes the CLA function. Keys:	26
CLALL	<i>Clear all</i> . Clears all stored programs and data. (Not Programmable.) Keys:	26
CLD	<i>Clear display</i> . Clears a message from the display.	26
	Selects the CLEAR menu.	26

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
CLKEYS	Clears all CUSTOM menu assignments. Keys:	70
CLLCD	<i>Clear LCD (liquid crystal display).</i> Blanks the entire display. Keys:	136
CLMENU	<i>Clear MENU.</i> Deletes all menu key definitions for the programmable menu. Keys:	146
CLP	Clears a program from memory. Keys: Parameter: global label Indirect: No	119
CLRG	Clears all of the numbered storage registers to zero. Keys:	64
CLST	Clears the stack registers to zero. Keys:	43
CLV	Clears a variable from memory. Keys: Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	62
CLX	Clears X-register to zero. If digit entry is terminated (no cursor in the display),  also executes CLX. Keys:	48
CLΣ	<i>Clear statistics.</i> Clears the accumulated statistical data in the summation registers. Keys:	228
COMB	<i>Combinations</i> of $y$ items taken $x$ at a time. Returns $y! \div (x!(y - x)!)$ . Keys:	87





















Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
COMPLEX	Converts two real numbers (or matrices) into a complex number (or matrix). Converts a complex number (or matrix) into two real numbers (or matrices). Keys: <b>COMPLEX</b>	91
<b>CONVERT</b>	Selects the CONVERT menu.	82
CORR	Returns a <i>correlation coefficient</i> using the current statistical data and curve-fitting model. Keys: <b>STAT</b> <b>CFIT</b> <b>CORR</b>	240
COS	<i>Cosine</i> . Returns $\cos x$ . Key: <b>COS</b>	81
COSH	<i>Hyperbolic cosine</i> . Returns $\cosh x$ .	89
CPXRES	<i>Complex-results</i> . Enables the calculator to return a complex result, even if the inputs are real numbers. Keys: <b>MODES</b> <b>CRES</b>	94
CPX?	If the X-register contains a complex number, executes the next program line; if the X-register does not contain a complex number, skips the next program line.	151
CROSS	Returns the <i>cross product</i> of two vectors (matrices or complex numbers). Keys: <b>MATRIX</b> <b>CROSS</b>	220
<b>CUSTOM</b>	Selects the CUSTOM menu.	68
DECM	Selects <i>Decimal mode</i> (base 10). Keys: <b>BASE</b> <b>DECM</b>	245
DEG	Selects the <i>Degrees</i> angular mode. Keys: <b>MODES</b> <b>DEG</b>	80



























Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
DEL	<p><i>Deletes</i> the specified number of lines from the current program. Program-entry mode must be on. (Not programmable.)</p> <p>Keys:   </p> <p>Parameter: number of lines Indirect: No</p>	120
DELAY	<p>Sets the print <i>delay</i> time to <i>x</i> seconds.</p> <p>Keys:  </p>	103
DELR	<p><i>Delete row.</i> Deletes the current row from the indexed matrix.</p> <p>Keys:   </p>	214
DET	<p>Returns the <i>determinant</i> of the matrix in the X-register.</p> <p>Keys:  </p>	219
DIM	<p><i>Dimensions</i> a matrix to <i>x</i> columns and <i>y</i> rows. If the matrix does not exist, DIM creates it.</p> <p>Keys:  </p> <p>Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes</p>	217
DIM?	<p>Returns the <i>dimensions</i> of the matrix in the X-register (<i>rows</i> to the Y-register and <i>columns</i> to the X-register).</p>	217
	Selects the DISP menu.	34
DOT	<p>Returns the <i>dot product</i> of two vectors (matrices or complex numbers).</p> <p>Keys:  </p>	220
DSE	<p><i>Decrement, Skip if</i> (less than or) <i>Equal</i>. Given <i>cccccc.ffff</i> in a variable or register, decrements <i>cccccc</i> by <i>ii</i> and skips the next program line if <i>cccccc</i> is now <math>\leq</math> <i>fff</i>.</p> <p>Keys:  </p> <p>Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes</p>	153
	<p><i>Enter exponent.</i> Adds "E" to the number being entered. Indicates that a power of ten follows.</p>	27














Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
EDIT	<p>Edit a matrix in the X-register.</p> <p>Keys:   </p>	206
EDITN	<p>Edit a <i>named</i> matrix.</p> <p>Keys:    </p> <p>Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes</p>	208
END	<p>End of a program.</p>	118
ENG	<p>Selects <i>Engineering</i> display format.</p> <p>Keys:   </p> <p>Parameter: number of digits Indirect: Yes</p>	36
ENTER	<p>Separates two numbers keyed in sequentially; copies <math>x</math> into the Y-register, <math>y</math> into the Z-register, and <math>z</math> into the T-register, and loses <math>t</math>.</p> <p>Key: </p>	46
	Exits the current menu. (Not programmable.)	23
EXITALL	Exits <i>all</i> menus.	
EXPF	<p>Selects the <i>exponential</i> curve-fitting model.</p> <p>Keys:     </p>	240
E $\rightarrow$ X	<p>Natural exponential. Returns <math>e^x</math>.</p> <p>Keys:  </p>	78
E $\rightarrow$ X-1	<p>Natural exponential for values of <math>x</math> which are close to zero. Returns <math>e^x - 1</math>, which provides a much higher accuracy in the fractional part of the result.</p>	—
FC?	<p>If the specified flag is clear, executes the next program line; if the flag is set, skips the next program line.</p> <p>Keys:   </p> <p>Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes</p>	41



Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
FC?C	<p>If the specified flag is clear, executes the next program line; if the flag is set, skips the next program line. Cleared after the test is complete. (This function can be used only with flags 00 through 35 and 81 through 99.)</p> <p>Keys:  <b>FLAGS</b>  <b>FC?C</b></p> <p>Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes</p>	41
FCSTX	<p><i>Forecasts</i> an x-value given a y-value.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>STAT</b>  <b>CFIT</b>  <b>FCSTX</b></p>	240
FCSTY	<p><i>Forecasts</i> a y-value given an x-value.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>STAT</b>  <b>CFIT</b>  <b>FCSTY</b></p>	240
FIX	<p>Selects <i>Fixed-decimal</i> display format.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>DISP</b>  <b>FIX</b></p> <p>Parameter: number of digits Indirect: Yes</p>	35
 <b>FLAGS</b>	Selects the <b>FLAGS</b> menu.	41
FNRM	Returns the <i>Frobenius norm</i> of the matrix in the X-register.	219
FP	<p>Returns the <i>fractional part</i> of x.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>CONVERT</b>   <b>FP</b></p>	86
FS?	<p>If the specified flag is set, executes the next program line; if the flag is clear, skips the next program line.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>FLAGS</b>  <b>FS?</b></p> <p>Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes</p>	41
FS?C	<p>If the specified flag is set, executes the next program line; if the flag is clear, skips the next program line. Clears the flag after the test is complete. (This function can be used only with flags 00 through 35 and 81 through 99.)</p> <p>Keys:  <b>FLAGS</b>  <b>FS?C</b></p> <p>Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes</p>	41

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
GAMMA	<p><i>Gamma function.</i> Returns <math>\Gamma(x)</math>.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>PROB</b> <b>GAM</b></p>	88
GETKEY	<p><i>Get key.</i> The calculator waits for you to press a key. When you do, the key number is returned to the X-register. Keys are numbered from 1 through 37 ( <b>Σ+</b> through  <b>+</b>) for normal keys and 38 through 74 ( <b>Σ-</b> through  <b>CATALOG</b>) for shifted keys.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>▲</b> <b>GETK</b></p>	
GETM	<p><i>Get matrix.</i> Copies a submatrix into the X-register from the indexed matrix.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>MATRIX</b> <b>▲</b> <b>GETM</b></p>	226
GRAD	<p>Selects <i>Grads</i> angular mode.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>MODES</b> <b>GRAD</b></p>	80
GROW	<p>Selects <i>Grow</i> mode. Executing <math>\rightarrow</math> or <math>J+</math> causes the matrix to grow by one new row if the index pointers are at the last (lower-right) element in the matrix.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>MATRIX</b> <b>EDIT</b> <b>▼</b> <b>GROW</b></p>	213
GTO	<p><i>Go to label.</i> From the keyboard, moves the program pointer to the specified label. In a running program, causes the program to branch to the specified label.</p> <p>Keys:  <b>GTO</b></p> <p>Parameter: local or global label      Indirect: Yes</p>	141
<b>GTO</b>	Moves the program pointer to a line number or global label. (Not programmable.)	111
<b>GTO</b>	Moves the program pointer to a new program space. (Not programmable.)	118
HEXM	<p>Selects <i>Hexadecimal mode</i> (base 16).</p> <p>Keys:  <b>BASE</b> <b>HEXM</b></p>	245

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
HMS+	Adds $x$ and $y$ using $H.MMSSss$ (hours-minutes-seconds) format.	84
HMS-	Subtracts $x$ from $y$ using $H.MMSSss$ format.	84
I+	Increments the row pointer in the indexed matrix.	224
I-	Decrements the row pointer in the indexed matrix.	224
INDEX	<p><i>Indexes</i> a named matrix.</p> <p>Keys:    </p> <p>Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes</p>	223
INPUT	<p>Recalls a register or variable to the X-register, displays the name of the register or variable along with the contents of the X-register, and halts program execution; pressing  (or ) stores <math>x</math> into the register or variable; pressing  cancels. (Used only in programs.)</p> <p>Keys:   </p> <p>Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes</p>	121
INSR	<p><i>Inserts</i> a row in the indexed matrix.</p> <p>Keys:     </p>	214
INTEG	<p><i>Integrates</i> the selected integration program with respect to the specified variable.</p> <p>Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes</p>	203
INVRT	<p>Returns the <i>inverse</i> of the matrix in the X-register.</p> <p>Keys:   </p>	219
IP	<p>Returns the <i>integer part</i> of <math>x</math>.</p> <p>Keys:    </p>	86
ISG	<p><i>Increment, Skip if Greater.</i> Given <math>cccccc.fff</math> in a variable or register, increments <math>cccccc</math> by <math>ii</math> and skips the next program line if <math>cccccc</math> is now <math>&gt; fff</math>.</p> <p>Keys:    </p> <p>Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes</p>	153

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
J+	Increments the column pointer in the indexed matrix.	224
J—	Decrements the column pointer in the indexed matrix.	224
KEYASN	Selects <i>Key-assignments</i> mode for the CUSTOM menu. Keys:  <b>MODES</b>  <b>KEY</b>	167
KEYG	On menu <i>key</i> , <i>go to</i> . Defines the label to be branched to when a particular menu key is pressed. Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  <b>KEYG</b> Parameters: refer to the table on page 72.	145
KEYX	On menu <i>key</i> , <i>execute</i> . Defines the label to be executed (as a subroutine) when a particular menu key is pressed. Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  <b>KEYX</b> Parameters: refer to the table on page 72.	145
LASTX	<i>Last x</i> . Recalls the last value of <i>x</i> used in a calculation. Keys:  <b>LASTx</b>	48
LBL	<i>Label</i> . Identifies programs and routines for execution and branching. Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>LBL</b> Parameter: local or global label      Indirect: No	116
LCLBL	Selects <i>Local label</i> mode for the CUSTOM menu. Keys:  <b>MODES</b>  <b>LCLBL</b>	167
LINF	Selects the <i>linear</i> curve-fitting model. Keys:  <b>STAT</b> <b>CFIT</b> <b>MODL</b> <b>LINF</b>	240
LINΣ	Selects <i>Linear statistics</i> mode, which uses six summation coefficients. Keys:  <b>STAT</b>  <b>LINΣ</b>	233

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
LIST	Prints a portion of a program listing. (Not programmable.) Keys: Parameter: number of lines Indirect: No	105
LN	<i>Natural logarithm.</i> Returns $\ln x$ . Key:	78
LN1 + X	Natural logarithm for values close to zero. Returns $\ln(1 + x)$ , which provides a much higher accuracy in the fractional part of the result.	
LOG	<i>Common logarithm.</i> Returns $\log_{10} x$ . Key:	78
LOGF	Selects the <i>logarithmic</i> curve-fitting model. Keys:	240
MAN	Selects <i>Manual</i> print mode. Keys:	102
MAT?	If the X-register contains a matrix, executes the next program line; if the X-register does not contain a matrix, skips the next program line.	151
MEAN	<i>Mean.</i> Returns the mean of $x$ -values ( $\Sigma x \div n$ ) and the mean of $y$ -values ( $\Sigma y \div n$ ). Keys:	231
MENU	Selects the programmable menu. Keys:	146
MOD	<i>Modulo.</i> Returns the remainder for $y \div x$ . Keys:	87
MVAR	Declares a <i>menu variable</i> . Keys: Parameter: variable name Indirect: No	125













Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
N!	<i>Factorial</i> . Returns $x!$ . Keys: <b>PROB</b> <b>N!</b>	87
NEWMAT	<i>New matrix</i> . Creates a $y \times x$ matrix in the X-register. Keys: <b>MATRIX</b> <b>NEW</b>	206
NORM	Selects <i>Normal</i> print mode, which prints a record of keystrokes. Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>NORM</b>	102
NOT	Logical <i>NOT</i> . Returns NOT $x$ . Keys: <b>BASE</b> <b>LOGIC</b> <b>NOT</b>	250
OCTM	Selects <i>Octal mode</i> (base 8). Keys: <b>BASE</b> <b>OCTM</b>	245
<b>OFF</b>	Turns the calculator off. (Not programmable.)	18
OFF	Turns the calculator off (programmable). (Pressing <b>OFF</b> does not execute the programmable OFF function.)	
OLD	Recalls the current element from the indexed matrix. (Equivalent to RCLEL.)	213
ON	<i>Continuous on</i> . Prevents the calculator from automatically turning off after ten minutes of inactivity.	
OR	Logical <i>OR</i> . Returns $x$ OR $y$ . Keys: <b>BASE</b> <b>LOGIC</b> <b>OR</b>	250
<b>PGM.FCN</b>	Selects the PGM.FCN ( <i>programming functions</i> ) menu.	24
PERM	<i>Permutations</i> of $y$ items taken $x$ at a time. Returns $y! \div (y - x)!$ . Keys: <b>PROB</b> <b>PERM</b>	87
PGMINT	Selects a <i>program to integrate</i> . Keys: <b>f(x)</b> <b>PINT</b> ( <i>in Program-entry mode</i> ) Parameter: global label Indirect: Yes	203




















Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
PGMSLV	Selects a <i>program to solve</i> . Keys:    (in Program-entry mode) Parameter: global label Indirect: Yes	189
PI	Recalls an approximation of $\pi$ into the X-register (3.14159265359). Keys:	117
PIXEL	Turns on a single pixel (dot) in the display. The location of the pixel is given by the numbers in the X- and Y-registers. Keys:	135
POLAR	Selects <i>Polar</i> coordinate mode for displaying complex numbers. Keys:	80
POSA	<i>Position in Alpha</i> . Searches the Alpha register for the target specified in the X-register. If found, returns the character position; if not found, returns -1.	134
PRA	<i>Print Alpha register</i> . Keys:	102
PRLCD	<i>Print LCD (liquid crystal display)</i> . Prints the entire display. Keys:	101
	Toggles the calculator in and out of <i>Program-entry mode</i> .	111
	Selects the PRINT menu.	101
	Selects the PROB ( <i>probability</i> ) menu.	87
PROFF	<i>Printing off</i> . Clears flags 21 and 55. Keys:	101



Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
PROMPT	Displays the Alpha register and halts program execution. Keys: <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>PROM</b>	129
PRON	<i>Printing on.</i> Sets flags 21 and 55. Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>PON</b>	101
PRP	<i>Print program.</i> If a label is not specified, prints the current program. (Not programmable.) Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>PRP</b> Parameter: global label (optional) Indirect: No	104
PRSTK	<i>Print stack.</i> Prints the contents of the stack registers (X, Y, Z, and T). Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>PRST</b>	101
PRUSR	<i>Prints user variables and programs.</i> Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>PRUSR</b>	101
PRV	<i>Print variable.</i> Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>PRV</b> Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	63
PRX	<i>Print X-register.</i> Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>PRX</b>	101
PRΣ	<i>Print statistics.</i> Prints the contents of the summation registers. Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>PRΣ</b>	237
PSE	<i>Pauses</i> program execution for about 1 second. Keys: <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>PSE</b>	131
PUTM	<i>Put matrix.</i> Stores the matrix in the X-register into the indexed matrix beginning at the current element. Keys: <b>MATRIX</b> <b>PUTM</b>	226
PWRF	Selects the <i>power</i> curve-fitting model. Keys: <b>STAT</b> <b>CFIT</b> <b>MODL</b> <b>PWRF</b>	240

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
QUIET	Toggles flag 26 to disable/enable the beeper. (Not programmable.) Keys:	275
RAD	Selects <i>Radians</i> angular mode. Keys:	80
RAN	Returns a <i>random</i> number ( $0 \leq x < 1$ ). Keys:	88
RCL	<i>Recalls</i> data into the X-register. Key: Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	55
RCL+	<i>Recall addition.</i> Recalls data and adds it to the contents of the X-register. Keys: Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
RCL−	<i>Recall subtraction.</i> Recalls data and subtracts it from the contents of the X-register. Keys: Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
RCL×	<i>Recall multiplication.</i> Recalls data and multiplies it by the contents of the X-register. Keys: Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
RCL÷	<i>Recall division.</i> Recalls data and divides it into the contents of the X-register. Keys: Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
RCLEL	<i>Recall element.</i> Recalls the current matrix element from the indexed matrix. Keys:	225

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
RCLIJ	Recalls the row- and column-pointer values ( <i>I</i> and <i>J</i> ) for the indexed matrix. Keys:  <b>MATRIX</b>  <b>RCLIJ</b>	224
RDX,	Selects a <i>comma</i> to be used as the radix mark (decimal point). Keys:  <b>DISP</b> <b>RDX,</b>	36
RDX.	Selects a <i>period</i> to be used as the radix mark (decimal point). Keys:  <b>DISP</b> <b>RDX.</b>	36
REALRES	<i>Real-results</i> . Disables the calculator's ability to return a complex result using real-number inputs. Keys:  <b>MODES</b>  <b>RRES</b>	94
REAL?	If the X-register contains a real number, executes the next program line; if the X-register does not contain a real number, skips the next program line.	151
RECT	Selects <i>Rectangular</i> coordinate mode for displaying complex numbers. Keys:  <b>MODES</b> <b>RECT</b>	80
RND	<i>Rounds</i> the number in the X-register using the current display format. Keys:  <b>CONVERT</b>  <b>RND</b>	86
RNRM	Returns the <i>row norm</i> of the matrix in the X-register.	219
ROTXY	<i>Rotates</i> the 36-bit number in the Y-register by <i>x</i> bits. Keys:  <b>BASE</b> <b>LOGIC</b> <b>ROTXY</b>	250
RSUM	Returns the <i>row sum</i> of each row of the matrix in the X-register and returns the sums in a column matrix.	220

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
RTN	<p><i>Return.</i> In a running program, branches the program pointer back to the line following the most recent XEQ instruction. If there is no matching XEQ instruction, program execution halts. From the keyboard, RTN moves the program pointer to line 00 of the current program.</p> <p>Keys:   </p>	143
R<>R	<p><i>Row swap row.</i> Swaps the elements in rows <math>x</math> and <math>y</math> in the indexed matrix.</p>	225
R↑	<p><i>Rolls</i> the contents of the four stack registers <i>up</i> one position.</p>	
R↓	<p><i>Rolls</i> the contents of the four stack registers <i>down</i> one position.</p> <p>Key: </p>	44
	<p><i>Run/stop.</i> Runs a program (beginning at the current program line) or stops a running program. In Program-entry mode, inserts a STOP instruction into the program.</p>	113
SCI	<p>Selects <i>Scientific</i> display format.</p> <p>Keys:   </p> <p>Parameter: number of digits                      Indirect: Yes</p>	35
SDEV	<p><i>Standard deviation.</i> Returns <math>s_x</math> and <math>s_y</math> using the current statistical data.</p> <p>Keys:   </p>	232
SEED	<p>Stores a <i>seed</i> for the random number generator.</p> <p>Keys:   </p>	88
SF	<p>Sets <i>flag nn</i> (<math>00 \leq nn \leq 35</math>; <math>81 \leq nn \leq 99</math>).</p> <p>Keys:   </p> <p>Parameter: flag number                      Indirect: Yes</p>	41
 	<p><i>Shows</i> full precision of the number in the X-register, the entire Alpha register, or a complete program line.</p>	36

























Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
SIGN	<i>Sign.</i> Returns 1 for $x \geq 0$ , $-1$ for $x < 0$ , and 0 for non-numbers. Returns the unit vector of a complex number. Keys: <b>CONVERT</b> <b>SIGN</b>	86
SIN	<i>Sine.</i> Returns $\sin x$ . Key: <b>SIN</b>	80
SINH	<i>Hyperbolic sine.</i> Returns $\sinh x$ .	89
SIZE	Sets the number of storage registers. Keys: <b>MODES</b> <b>SIZE</b> Parameter: number of registers Indirect: No	64
SLOPE	Returns the <i>slope</i> of the linear transformation of the current curve-fitting model. Keys: <b>STAT</b> <b>CFIT</b> <b>SLOPE</b>	240
SOLVE	Solves for an unknown variable. Keys: <b>SOLVER</b> <b>SOLVE</b> (in Program-entry mode) Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	189
<b>SOLVER</b>	Selects the SOLVER menu.	178
SQRT	<i>Square root.</i> Returns $\sqrt{x}$ . Key: <b><math>\sqrt{x}</math></b>	78
SST	<i>Single step.</i> Moves the program pointer to the next program line. (Not programmable.) Keys: <b>SST</b> (or  if no menu is displayed)	114
<b>STAT</b>	Selects the STAT ( <i>statistics</i> ) menu.	231
STO	<i>Stores</i> a copy of $x$ into a destination register or variable. Key: <b>STO</b> Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	55
STO+	<i>Store addition.</i> Adds $x$ to an existing register or variable. Keys: <b>STO</b> <b>+</b> Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61



Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
STO−	<p><i>Store subtraction.</i> Subtracts <math>x</math> from an existing register or variable.</p> <p>Keys: <span>STO</span> <span>−</span></p> <p>Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes</p>	61
STO×	<p><i>Store multiplication.</i> Multiplies an existing register or variable by <math>x</math>.</p> <p>Keys: <span>STO</span> <span>×</span></p> <p>Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes</p>	61
STO÷	<p><i>Store division.</i> Divides an existing register or variable by <math>x</math>.</p> <p>Keys: <span>STO</span> <span>÷</span></p> <p>Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes</p>	61
STOEL	<p><i>Store element.</i> Stores a copy of <math>x</math> into the current element of the indexed matrix.</p> <p>Keys: <span>MATRIX</span> <span>▲</span> <span>STOEL</span></p>	225
STOIJ	<p>Moves the row- and column-pointers to <math>I = x</math> and <math>J = y</math> in the indexed matrix.</p> <p>Keys: <span>MATRIX</span> <span>▲</span> <span>STOIJ</span></p>	224
STOP	<p><i>Stops</i> program execution.</p> <p>Key: <span>R/S</span> (in Program-entry mode)</p>	114
STR?	<p>If the X-register contains an Alpha string, executes the next program line; if the X-register does not contain an Alpha string, skips the next program line.</p>	151
SUM	<p>Returns the sums <math>\Sigma x</math> and <math>\Sigma y</math> into the X- and Y-registers.</p> <p><span>STAT</span> <span>SUM</span></p>	231
TAN	<p><i>Tangent.</i> Returns <math>\tan x</math>.</p> <p>Key: <span>TAN</span></p>	—
TANH	<p><i>Hyperbolic tangent.</i> Returns <math>\tanh x</math>.</p>	89

















Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
TONE	Sounds a <i>tone</i> . Keys: <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>TONE</b> Parameter: tone number (0–9) Indirect: Yes	144
TRACE	Selects <i>Trace</i> printing mode, which prints a record of keystrokes and results. Keys: <b>PRINT</b> <b>TRACE</b>	102
TRANS	Returns the <i>transpose</i> of the matrix in the X-register. Keys: <b>MATRIX</b> <b>TRAN</b>	219
UVEC	<i>Unit vector</i> . Returns the unit vector for the matrix or complex number in the X-register. Keys: <b>MATRIX</b> <b>UVEC</b>	220
VARMENU	Creates a <i>variable menu</i> using MVAR instructions following the specified global label. Keys: <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>VARM</b> Parameter: global program label Indirect: Yes	125
VIEW	Views the contents of a register or variable. Keys: <b>PGM.FCN</b> <b>VIEW</b> Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	128
WMEAN	<i>Weighted mean</i> . Returns the mean of x-values weighted by the y-values: $\sum xy \div \sum y$ . Keys: <b>STAT</b> <b>WMN</b>	231
WRAP	Selects <i>Wrap mode</i> , which prevents the indexed matrix from growing. Keys: <b>MATRIX</b> <b>EDIT</b> <b>WRAP</b>	213
X<>	Swaps the contents of the X-register with another register or variable. Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	—
X<>Y	Swaps the contents of the X- and Y-registers. Key: <b>xzy</b>	44



Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
$X < 0?$	<i>X less than zero test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?0$ $X<0?$	151
$X < Y?$	<i>X less than y test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?Y$ $X<Y?$	151
$X \leq 0?$	<i>X less than or equal to zero test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?0$ $X\leq 0?$	151
$X \leq Y?$	<i>X less than or equal to y test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?Y$ $X\leq Y?$	151
$X = 0?$	<i>X equal to zero test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?0$ $X=0?$	151
$X = Y?$	<i>X equal to y test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?Y$ $X=Y?$	151
$X \neq 0?$	<i>X not equal to zero test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?0$ $X\neq 0?$	151
$X \neq Y?$	<i>X not equal to y test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?Y$ $X\neq Y?$	151
$X > 0?$	<i>X greater than zero test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?0$ $X>0?$	151
$X > Y?$	<i>X greater than y test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?Y$ $X>Y?$	151
$X \geq 0?$	<i>X greater than or equal to zero test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?0$ $X\geq 0?$	151
$X \geq Y?$	<i>X greater than or equal to y test.</i> Keys:  <b>PGM.FCN</b>  $X?Y$ $X\geq Y?$	151

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
XEQ	<p><i>Execute</i> a function or program.</p> <p>Key: <span>□</span> XEQ</p> <p>Parameter: function or label                      Indirect: Yes</p>	143
XOR	<p>Logical <i>XOR</i> (<i>exclusive OR</i>). Returns <math>x \text{ XOR } y</math>.</p> <p>Keys: <span>□</span> <span>BASE</span> <span>LOGIC</span> <span>XOR</span></p>	250
XTOA	<p><i>X to Alpha</i>. Appends a character (specified by the code in the X-register) to the Alpha register. If the X-register contains an Alpha string, appends the entire string.</p> <p>Keys: <span>□</span> <span>PGM.FCN</span> <span>▼</span> <span>▼</span> <span>XTOR</span></p>	134
X <sup>2</sup>	<p><i>Square</i>. Returns <math>x^2</math>.</p> <p>Keys: <span>□</span> <span>x<sup>2</sup></span></p>	78
YINT	<p><i>Y intercept</i>. Returns the <math>y</math>-intercept of the curve fitted to the current statistical data.</p> <p>Keys: <span>□</span> <span>STAT</span> <span>CFIT</span> <span>YINT</span></p>	240
Y <sup>x</sup>	<p><i>Power</i>. Returns <math>y^x</math>.</p> <p>Keys: <span>□</span> <span>y<sup>x</sup></span></p>	78
<span>□</span> <span>f f(x)</span>	Selects the $f f(x)$ menu.	197
1/X	<p><i>Reciprocal</i>. Returns <math>1 \div x</math>.</p> <p>Key: <span>□</span> 1/x</p>	78
10 <sup>+</sup> X	<p><i>Common exponential</i>. Returns <math>10^x</math>.</p> <p>Keys: <span>□</span> <span>10<sup>x</sup></span></p>	78
+	<p><i>Addition</i>. Returns <math>y + x</math>.</p> <p>Key: <span>□</span> +</p>	78
−	<p><i>Subtraction</i>. Returns <math>y - x</math>.</p> <p>Key: <span>□</span> −</p>	78

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
$\times$	<i>Multiplication.</i> Returns $x \times y$ . Key: $\boxed{\times}$	78
$\div$	<i>Division.</i> Returns $y \div x$ . Key: $\boxed{\div}$	78
$+/-$	Changes the sign of the number in the X-register. While entering an exponent, can also be used to change the sign of the exponent. Key: $\boxed{+/-}$	78
$\Sigma +$	<i>Summation plus.</i> Accumulates a pair of x- and y-values into the summation registers. Key: $\boxed{\Sigma +}$	228
$\Sigma -$	<i>Summation minus.</i> Subtracts a pair of x- and y-values from the summation registers. Keys: $\boxed{\Sigma -}$	232
$\Sigma \text{REG}$	<i>Summation registers.</i> Defines which storage register begins the block of summation registers. Keys: $\boxed{\text{STAT}}$ $\boxed{\nabla}$ $\boxed{\Sigma \text{REG}}$ Parameter: register number Indirect: Yes	234
$\Sigma \text{REG?}$	Returns the register number of the first summation register.	234
$\rightarrow \text{DEC}$	<i>To decimal.</i> Converts the octal (base 8) representation of a number to decimal (base 10). Note: This function is included to provide program compatibility with the HP-41 (which uses the function name DEC) and is not related to the Base application (chapter 16).	171
$\rightarrow \text{DEG}$	<i>To degrees.</i> Converts an angle-value from radians to degrees. Returns $(360/2\pi)x$ . Keys: $\boxed{\text{CONVERT}}$ $\boxed{\rightarrow \text{DEG}}$	83
$\rightarrow \text{HMS}$	<i>To hours, minutes, and seconds.</i> Converts $x$ from a decimal fraction to a minutes-seconds format. Keys: $\boxed{\text{CONVERT}}$ $\boxed{\rightarrow \text{HMS}}$	83

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
→HR	<i>To hours.</i> Converts $x$ from a minutes-seconds format to a decimal fraction.	83
→OCT	<i>To octal.</i> Converts a decimal number to the octal representation. Note: This function is included to provide program compatability with the HP-41 (which uses the function name OCT) and is not related to the Base application (chapter 16).	171
→POL	<i>To polar.</i> Converts $x$ and $y$ to the corresponding polar coordinates $r$ and $\theta$ . If the X-register contains a complex number, converts the two parts of the number to polar values. Keys:   	84
→RAD	<i>To radians.</i> Converts an angle value in degrees to radians. Returns $(2\pi/360)x$ . <esc> Keys:   	83
→REC	<i>To rectangular.</i> Converts $r$ (in the X-register) and $\theta$ (in the Y-register) to the corresponding rectangular coordinates, $x$ and $y$ . If the X-register contains a complex number, converts the two parts of the number to rectangular values. Keys:   	84
	Backspaces or clears X-register. In Program-entry mode, deletes the current program line.	25
 EDIT ←	Moves <i>left</i> one element in the indexed matrix.	212
 EDIT ↑	Moves <i>up</i> one element in the indexed matrix.	212
 EDIT ↓	Moves <i>down</i> one element in the indexed matrix.	212
 EDIT →	Moves <i>right</i> one element in the indexed matrix.	212
%	<i>Percent.</i> Returns $(x \times y) \div 100$ . (Leaves the $y$ -value in the Y-register.) Keys:  	79
%CH	<i>Percent change.</i> Returns $(x - y)(100 \div y)$ .	79

# Subject Index







---

Page numbers in **bold type** indicate primary references. *To look up functions by name, use the "Operation Index" (pages 310 through 335).* Special (nonalphabetic) characters and symbols are listed at the end of this index.

## A


- A...F digits, 245, 246, **247**
- Absolute value, **86**, 310
- Accessing program labels, **116–117**, 148–149
- Accuracy of integration (ACC), 197, 200, 201, **202–203**, 204
- Addition. *See* Arithmetic
- Adjusting display contrast, 20
- Advertising (example), 241
- AGRAPH function, **136–137**, 311
  - control flags, 137, 276
- Alpha characters, 37–39, 292–296
  - as parameters, 73
  - in programs, 130
  - table of, 288–291
  - typing, 37
- Alpha data, 65–66, **132–135**, 151
- Alpha Data Is Invalid, 283
- ALPHA menu, 22, 38, 292–296
- Alpha mode, **38–39**, 65
- Alpha program labels, 116
- Alpha register, **38–40**, 272
  - capacity of, 39, 130
  - clearing, 26, 39
  - displaying, 40, **129**, 132
  - editing (appending), 39, 130
  - printing, 40, 102, 132
  - replacing contents of, 39, 130
  - storing and recalling, 65–66
- Alpha strings, 37, 60, 65–66
  - entering, 37, 130
  - in matrices, 60
  - in programs, 130–131
  - in the real-variable catalog, 62
  - in storage registers, 60
  - manipulating, 65–66, 132–135
  - special characters in, **134**, 138–139, 288, 289, 291
- Altering parts of numbers, 86
- AND, logical, **250**, 311
- Angles,
  - converting, 83
  - expressed in degrees-minutes-seconds, 83
- Angular mode (Degrees, Radians, or Grads), **80**, 91
- Annunciators, 19–20
- Append character (†), **130**, 291
- Application menus, **21**, 22
  - BASE, 245, 297
  - MATRIX, 206, 212, 224, 303



SOLVER, 178, 307  
 STAT, 231, 308  
 $\text{ff}(x)$ , 196, 309  
*See also* Function menus  
 Arc. *See* Trigonometry, inverse functions; or Hyperbolic functions  
 Area of a circle, 108  
 "AREA" program, 109  
 Arithmetic,  
     complex-number, 93–94  
     integer, 249  
     matrix, 218–219  
     simple, 28–33  
     *See also* Automatic memory stack  
 Arrays. *See* Matrices  
 Arrow keys,  
     , 25  
     , 23, 114  
     , , , and  
     , 206, 209, 211, 212,  
     213  
 Audio enable, 275, 281, 326  
 Automatic execution, 274, 280  
 Automatic exiting, 22  
 Automatic memory stack, 31, 42–54  
     and the display, 43–44  
     drop, 45  
     lift, 45, 46  
     registers, 43  
     reviewing, 44  
 AVIEW function, 40, 129, 132, 312


## B

Backspace, 25  
 Bad Guess(es), 188, 283  
 Base  
     application, 245–251  
     arithmetic, 249  
     conversions, 245–246  
 BASE menu, 245, 297  
 Base mode flags, 278, 282  
 Batt Too Low To Print, 104,  
     283  
 Batteries, 19, 104, 257–260

Beeper, disabling, 275  
 Bessel function, 198, 201, 204  
 Best curve-fitting model, 240  
 Binary mode, 138, 245, 246, 247, 278  
 BIT? function, 151, 250  
 Body of a program, 117  
 Boolean logic functions, 250  
 Bounds (limits) of integration, 196,  
     197, 200–201, 203, 204  
 "BOXSLV" program segment, 189  
 Branching, 141–145  
     conditional tests, 149–151  
     do-if-true rule, 149  
     GTO function, 141–143, 145, 149,  
         152  
     XEQ function, 141, 143–145, 147,  
         149  
     *See also* Looping  
 "BSSL" program, 198, 199  
 Busy annunciator (()), 20

## C

$c$ , the speed of light, 51, 52  
 Calling a subroutine, 143–145  
 Cancelling  
     digit entry, 28  
     a function, 76  
     a menu. *See* **EXIT**  
 Capacity of the Alpha register, 39–40  
 CATALOG menu, 40, 298  
     complex numbers in, 62, 98  
     functions in, 67–68  
     matrices in, 62  
     programs in, 112, 149  
     real numbers in, 62  
     variables in, 62  
 Chain calculations, 31, 52–54  
 Changing the batteries, 258–260  
 Changing menus, 21, 23  
 Changing the sign of a number, 27,  
     78  
 Character set, 288–291  
     printer, 105  
 Characters. *See* Alpha characters

- CHS function (HP-41), 171
- CLEAR menu, 26, 299
- Clearing
- all programs and data, 26, 267–268
  - the Alpha register, 26
  - Continuous Memory, 268
  - the display, 25, 136
  - a flag, 41
  - key assignments, 70
  - a message, 25, 27, 283, 313
  - a program, 26, 119, 120
  - program lines, 26, 120
  - the programmable MENU, 26, 146
  - the stack, 26, 43
  - statistical data, 26, 288
  - storage registers, 26, 64
  - a variable, 26, 62
  - with , 25
  - the X-register, 25, 26, 48
- Columns in a matrix, number of, 206, 208, 217
- Combinations, 87
- Commas
- in Alpha strings, 289, 296
  - in numbers, 34, 36, 254, 275–276
- Commands. *See* Functions
- Common exponential, 78, 317
- Common logarithm, 78, 322
- Comparisons, 151
- Complex matrices, 214–216
- creating, 214
  - converting to real matrices, 98–99, 215
- Complex numbers, 90–99
- changing (angular modes), 80, 93
  - defined, 90–91
  - displaying, 92–93
  - in a matrix, 60, 215–216
  - in storage registers, 60, 98–99
- Complex results, 94, 169–170, 278
- disabling, 170
- Conditional functions, 149–151, 152
- Consecutive numeric constants in a program, 118, 256
- Constants
- for integration, 197, 200, 203
  - in programs, 117–118, 256
  - in the stack, 47
- Constant?, 188, 283
- Continuous Memory, 18, 258, 268
- Continuous power on, 323
- Contrast of display, 20
- CONVERT menu, 82, 86, 300
- Converting
- angular values, 83
  - coordinates, 84–85
  - hours-minutes-seconds values, 83
  - matrices to and from complex, 99, 215
- Coordinate conversions, 84–85
- Coordinate mode (Rectangular or Polar), 80, 91
- Correcting mistakes, 25, 48, 49–50
- in programs, 114
  - with statistical data, 232–233
- Corvallis, Oregon. *See* Rainfall
- Creating a matrix,
- complex, 214
  - named, 208
  - in the X-register, 206
- Cross product, 97, 98, 220
- Cube root, 78, 255
- Cummulative growth, 47
- Current
- program, 111
  - program line, 111
  - modes, 22
- See also* Mode(s)
- Cursor, 19, 28, 39
- Curve fitting, 239–244
- models, 239–240, 277, 279, 282
  - transformation equations, 244
- CUSTOM menu, 22, 68–70, 112–113, 275,
- for executing local labels, 167–168, 278



## D

Data points. *See* Statistical data

Data types, 43, 56, 60

Alpha strings, 37, 65–66

complex numbers, 90, 169

matrices, 205

matrices, complex, 214

real numbers, 43, 60

Debugging a program, 102, 114

DEC function (HP-41), 171, 334

Decimal hours or degrees, 83–84

Decimal mode, 245, 247, 248, 278

Decimal places, number of, 34–35

*See also* Display format

Decimal point

as radix mark, 36, 275–276

as digit separators, 36, 275–276

as a period, 37

Declaring menu variables, 125, 180, 198

Default settings, 280–282

Defining programmable menu keys, 145–146

Degrees angular mode, 80, 93, 277

Degrees-minutes-seconds. *See* Hours-minutes-seconds

Deleting

characters, 25, 134, 135

ENDs, 118

program lines, 112, 120

rows in a matrix, 214, 225

Determinant of a matrix, 216, 219

Diagnostic test, 261–262

Difference. *See* Arithmetic

Digit entry, 28

Digit separators, 36, 276, 281

Dimension Error, 283

Dimensioning a matrix, 64, 208, 217

DISP menu, 34, 302

Display

contrast, 20

annunciators, 19, 23, 80, 100

format, 34–36

and stack registers, 43–44

Displaying

matrix elements, 206, 209, 211

numbers. *See* Display format

menus, 21–22

Distance, 190

Divide by 0, 284

Division. *See* Arithmetic

Do-if-true rule, 149, 151

Dot column for graphics, 136, 137

Dot product, 94, 96, 220

Dots in display (...). *See* Ellipsis

Double-wide printing, 103, 274, 280

"DPLLOT" program, 135, 154–158, 185

Drop, stack, 42, 45, 47

DSE function, 153, 316

Duplicating

the T-register, 47

the X-register, 46, 55

D-R function (HP-41), 171

## E

E (exponent of ten), 27–28

e, 78, 317

Earth, 51

Edge wrap, 280, 282

Editing

a matrix, 206, 208–209, 211–214

a program, 109–110, 111–112, 120

the storage registers, 235–237

Ellipsis (...), 40, 170, 289

.END., 118

END function, 118, 317

End wrap, 280, 282

Engineering display mode, 34, 36, 92

**ENTER**,

for separating numbers, 30, 46–47, 118

other uses, 47, 73, 170

Enhancing HP-41 programs, 175

## Entering

- Alpha characters, 37–39
- digits, 28, 46, 117–118
- nondecimal numbers, 247
- a parameter, 71–75
- statistical data, 228–230

## Environmental limits, 260

## Equation of motion for free-fall, 190–191

## Equations,

- integrating, 196
- root(s) of, 178, 183–186
- simplifying, 179

## Error of integration. *See* Uncertainty of computation

## Error messages, 283–287

- clearing, 25, 27, 283
- ignoring, 27

## Error stops, 115

## Errors. *See* Mistakes, correcting

## Evaluating expressions

- for integration, 197–199
- from the keyboard, 28–33, 52–54
- in a program, 108–110
- for the Solver, 179–182

## Executing functions, 67–76

- CUSTOM menu, 68–70
- function catalog, 67–68
- function menus, 21–22
- preview, 76

**[XEQ]**, 70

## Executing programs, 112–114

- CUSTOM menu, 112–113
- program catalog, 112

**[R/S]**, 113

**[XEQ]**, 112

## **[EXIT]**, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25

- automatic exiting, 22

## Exponential ( $e^x$ ), 78, 317

## Exponents, calculating (**[ $y^x$ ]**),

**[ $10^x$ ]**, **[ $e^x$ ]**, 28, 78

## Exponents of ten (**[E]**), 27–28, 316

## Extremum, 284

## Extremums, 188

# F

## FACT function (HP-41), 171

## Factorial, 21, 87

## Features, HP-42S, 4

## Filling a matrix, 206, 208–209, 211–214

- with complex numbers, 215

## Fixed-decimal display mode, 34, 35

## Flags, 41, 273–282

- setting and clearing, 41
- table of, 280–282
- testing, 41, 150
- that affect printing, 103
- that affect program execution, 131–132

- user, 273, 280, 282

## FLAGS menu, 41, 302

## Forecasting, 239–243

- curve models, 239–240

## Format. *See* Display format

## Fractional part, 86

- in a nondecimal number, 247

## FRC function (HP-41), 171

## “FREE” program, 190

## Frobenius norm, 219, 220

## Full precision, showing, 36

## Function menus, 21–22

- CATALOG, 40, 67, 112, 298

- CLEAR, 23, 26, 299

- CONVERT, 82–86, 300

- CUSTOM, 68–70, 112–113, 301

- DISP, 34, 302

- FLAGS, 41, 150, 302

- MODES, 22, 64, 80, 167, 304

- PGM.FCN, 24, 305

- PRINT, 101–102, 306

- PROB, 21, 87, 307

- TOP.FCN, 23, 308

*See also* Application menus






## Function names, 68, 71, 310, 310–335

## HP-41, 171–172

## previewing, 76

Functions,  
    assigning to CUSTOM, 68–69  
    executing, 67–76  
    one-number, 28, 29–30, 49, 77  
    two-number, 28, 30, 49, 77  
Future value. *See* Forecasting

## G

g, acceleration due to gravity, 190  
General mathematics, 77–78  
    *See also* Arithmetic  
GETKEY function, 319  
Global labels, 104, 116, 126, 119,  
    125, 142, 146  
    assigning to CUSTOM, 68–69,  
        112–113  
    for declaring variable menus, 125,  
        179, 180, 197, 198  
    search order, 149  
Global Span, 284  
Go to  
    label. *See* GTO function  
    matrix element, 212, 224  
Grads angular mode (**GRAD**), 20, 80,  
    277, 281  
Graphics, 135–140  
    *See also* “PLOT” program  
Grow mode, 212, 213, 225, 277, 282  
GTO function, 141–143, 145, 149,  
    152, 319  
 **GTO** , 111, 126, 128, 319  
 **GTO**  , 109, 111, 118, 123, 139,  
    319

## H

Halting a program, 112, 114, 122,  
    126, 129, 132, 145  
Hewlett-Packard quality, 3  
Hexadecimal mode, 245, 246–248,  
    251, 278  
    *See also* Base conversions  
HMS function (HP-41), 171

HP-41, 166–175  
    Alpha register, 169  
    compatibility, 166  
    data errors, 169  
    display, 170  
    function names, 171–172  
    printer interface, 169  
    programs, enhancing, 175  
    programs, entering, 172–174  
    range of numbers, 169  
    statistical operations, 168  
    User keyboard, 167  
*HP-42S Programming Examples and  
    Techniques* manual, 154, 175,  
    187, 239  
Hours-minutes-seconds, 83–84  
HR function (HP-41), 171  
Hyperbolic functions, 89

## I

I (row pointer), 211, 223  
i (the imaginary unit), 60, 90–91, 93  
Index pointers, 211, 223  
    controlling, 223–224  
Indexing a matrix, 223  
Indirect addressing, 71–73, 74, 256  
INPUT function, 121–124, 175, 279,  
    281, 320  
Inserting  
    program lines, 111  
    rows in a matrix, 214  
Installing batteries, 258–260  
Insufficient Memory, 256, 268,  
    284  
INT function (HP-41), 171  
Integer part, 86  
Integrating, 284  
Integrating flag, 279, 281  
Integration, numeric, 196–204  
    accuracy (ACC), 197, 201, 202–203,  
        204  
    algorithm, 197–198  
    calculation time, 198, 201, 203  
    interrupting, 201  
    iterations, 197

lower limit (*LLIM*), 196, **201**  
 in programs, 203–204  
 sampling, 197  
 uncertainty of, 203  
 upper limit (*ULIM*), 196, **201**  
 using, 197–202  
 writing programs for, 197–199  
*Integ*(*Integ*), 284  
 Interest rate, **192**, 193, 194, 195  
 Intermediate results, 31, 32, **42**, 52  
 Interrupted, 284  
 Invalid Data, 284  
 Invalid Forecast Model, 284  
 Invalid Type, 284  
 Inverse hyperbolic functions. *See* Hyperbolic functions  
 Inverse trigonometric functions. *See* Trigonometry, inverse (arc) functions  
 Inverting a matrix, 219  
 ISG function, 153, 320

## J


*J* (column pointer), 211, **223**  
 Jumping. *See* Branching

## K

Key assignment mode, 167, 278, **301**  
 Keyboard diagram, Inside front cover  
   Alpha mode, 39  
 Keying in  
   a binary number, 138, **247**  
   a complex number, 91  
   an exponent of ten, 27–28  
   a hexadecimal number, **247**  
   a matrix, 206–210  
   an octal number, **247**  
   a parameter, 71–75  
   a program, 108–110, **111–112**  
   a real number, 27–28  
   statistical data, **228–229**, 232–233, 238  
   an Alpha string, 37

Keystroke programming, 108  
*See also* Programming

## L

Łukasiewicz, 42  
 Label Not Found, 284  
 Labels. *See* Menu labels or Program labels  
 Largest numbers for base conversion, 248  
 Last *x*,  
   for correcting mistakes, 48, **49–50**  
   defined, 48  
   retrieving (  **LASTx** ), 48  
   for reusing numbers, 48, **50–52**  
 LAST X register, **48**, 58–60, 73  
   during recall arithmetic, 61–62  
 LBL function, 109, 111, 115, **116–117**, 321  
   *See also* Program labels  
 Least significant bit, 250  
 Left-to-right, working problems, 52–53  
 Levels of a menu. *See* Submenus  
 Lift, stack, 42, **45–46**  
   disabled, **46**, 48, 49, 276, 281  
 Limitations on statistical data, 237  
 Limits of integration, 196, 197, **200–202**, 203, 204  
 Linear regression (LINP), 239, 240  
   *See also* Curve fitting  
 Line feed character (↵), **129**, 160, 288  
 Lines, drawing, 136  
 Listing. *See* Printing  
 Local-label mode, 167–168, 278, 282, **301**  
 Local labels, **116–117**, 141, 142, 146  
   advantages, 149, 270  
   executing with CUSTOM, 167–168  
   search order, 148–149  
   short form, **116**, 149  
 Local maximum or minimum, **188**, 284  
 Logarithmic curve, **239**, 244

Logarithmic functions, 78  
 Long form local labels. *See* Short form local labels  
 Looping, 152–154  
     *See also* Branching  
 Lost return locations, 145, 286  
 Low battery power, 20, 104, 257–258, 279, 281  
 Low memory. *See*  
     Insufficient Memory  
 Lower limit of integration (LLIM), 196, 200, 201, 204  
 Lowercase letters,  
     printing, 103, 274, 280  
     typing, 37, 290–291



## M

Machine Reset, 257, 262, 267, 285  
 Mantissa. *See* Showing full precision  
 Manual printing mode, 102, 104, 274  
 MATA, MATB, and MATX, 221, 227  
 Mathematics. *See* Arithmetic  
 Matrices, 205–227  
     complex, 214–216  
     creating, 206–210, 214  
     filling, 206, 208–209, 211–214, 215  
     special, 63, 221, 227  
     storage registers (REGS), 63, 227  
 Matrix  
     arithmetic, 218–219  
     Editor, 211–214  
     functions, 219–220  
     Grow mode, 213, 225, 238, 242, 277, 282  
     scalar arithmetic, 218  
     containing statistical data, 237–239  
     variables, 40, 62, 227  
     vector functions, 94, 220  
     Wrap mode, 213  
 MATRIX menu, 206, 212, 224, 303  
 Maximum, 188, 284  
 Mean, 231  
 Memory  
     available, 4, 40, 269–270, 271–272  
     clearing, 25–26, 267–268  
     management, 267–272  
     organization, 271–272  
     requirements, 115, 272  
     reset, 267  
 Memory Clear, 257, 260, 268, 285  
 Menu  
     keys, 20–21  
     keys, defining, 145–146  
     labels, 20–21  
     levels. *See* Submenus  
     maps, 23–24, 292–309  
     rows, 23  
     variables, 125–126, 180, 198  
 Menus, 20–25, 292–309  
     application, 21, 22.  
         *See also* Application menus  
     exiting, 21, 22, 23, 25  
     function, 21, 22.  
         *See also* Function menus  
     introduction to, 20–21  
     selecting, 21, 22  
 Message flags, 279, 281  
 Messages, 283–287  
     clearing, 25, 27, 283, 313  
     displaying, 129  
     error, 27, 283–287  
     printing, 129, 132  
 Minimum, 188, 284  
 Minutes-seconds format. *See* Hours-minutes-seconds  
 Mistakes, correcting,  
     by backspacing, 25, 28  
     using the LAST X register, 49–50  
 Mode(s),  
     All display, 34, 36, 277  
     All $\Sigma$  (statistics), 168, 231, 233–234, 240, 277, 282  
     Alpha, 48, 65, 66, 132, 133, 279, 281  
     angular, 80, 91, 277  
     Degrees, 22, 80, 91, 95, 97, 277  
     display, 34–36, 276–277  
     Engineering display, 34, 36, 92, 277  
     Fixed-decimal display, 34, 35, 277



Grads, 80, 91, 277, 281  
 Manual printing, 102, 104, 274  
 Normal printing, 102, 274  
 Number display, 34–36, 277  
 Polar, 80, 91, 92, 93, 95, 97  
 Radians, 20, 80, 81  
 Rectangular, 22, 80, 91, 93  
 Scientific display, 34, 35  
 Trace printing, 102, 114, 274  
*See also* Flags  
 MODES menu, 22, 64, 80, 167  
 Modifying HP-41 programs, 175  
 Modulo (remainder), 86, 87  
 Moments, computing, 97–98  
 Most significant bit, 250  
 Moving data in the stack, 44–45  
 Moving the program pointer, 111, 114, 145  
 Multiple roots, finding, 183, 184–186  
 Multiplication. *See* Arithmetic  
 Multirow menus, 23

## N

Names,  
     register, 38, 43, 48, 57, 63  
     variable, 56  
 Natural exponential, 78  
 Natural logarithm, 78  
 Negative numbers, 27, 78  
     nondecimal, 248  
 Nested menus. *See* Submenus  
 Nested subroutines, 144  
 New program space, 109, 111, 118, 319  
 Next  
     menu row () , 23  
     program line ( **SST**) , 111, 112, 114  
 No, 149, 151, 285  
 No Complex Variables, 285  
 No Matrix Variables, 285  
 No Menu Variables, 285  
 No Real Variables, 285  
 No Variables, 285  
 Nonexistent, 285

Normal  
     execution, 112  
     printing mode, 102, 274  
 Normalized complex numbers, 92  
 Norms. *See* Frobenius norm or Row norm  
 NOT, logical, 250, 323  
 NULL, 76  
 Null program, 118  
 Number  
     of decimal places displayed, 34–36  
     entry, 27–28  
     of payments, 192  
 Numbers,  
     complex, 60, 90–99, 214–215  
     correcting. *See* Correcting mistakes  
     displaying, 34–36  
     keying in, 27–28  
     in a matrix. *See* Filling a matrix  
     in program lines, 117–118  
     internal representation of, 34  
     negative, 27, 248  
     nondecimal, 247, 248  
     random, 87, 88  
     range of, 33, 248  
     real, 43, 60  
     separating, 30, 46, 118, 170  
     with exponents of ten, 27–28  
     36-bit, 247, 248–249  
 Numerical integration. *See* Integration, numeric

## O

Objects. *See* Data types  
 OCT function (HP-41), 171, 335  
 Octal mode, 245, 246, 247, 248, 251, 278  
 OFF function, 323  
 Old value of a matrix element, 213  
 ON function, 323  
 One-number functions, 29–30, 49, 77  
     with a matrix, 218  
 One-variable statistics, 229  
 Operands. *See* Numbers  
 Operations, index of, 310–335

OR, logical, 250, 323  
 Order of  
   calculation, 31, 52–53  
   entry, 30  
 Out of Range, 33, 249, 286  
   *See also* Statistical data, limitations  
 Output, 121, 128–132  
   *See also* Printing  
 Overflow,  
   decimal numbers, 33, 237, 275,  
     286  
   nondecimal numbers, 248–249, 287

## P

Paired-sample statistics. *See* Two-variable statistics  
 Parameters, 71–75  
   Alpha, 73, 74  
   numeric, 72  
   stack registers (ST), 58–59, 73  
   tables of, 71–72  
 Parentheses, 294  
 Parts of numbers, 86–87  
 Pause (PSE), 131, 170, 325  
 Payment, 192, 194  
 Percent, 79  
 Percent change, 79–80  
 Periods  
   in Alpha strings, 37  
   in numbers, 36, 275–276  
 Permanent .END., 118, 272  
 Permutations, 87  
 PGMINT function, 203, 204, 323  
 PGMSLV function, 189, 324  
 PGM.FCN menu, 23, 24, 305  
 Phasor form. *See* Polar mode  
 Pi ( $\pi$ ), 80, 81, 108, 117, 324  
 PIXEL function, 135, 136, 158, 162,  
   324  
 "PLOT" program, 135, 158–165  
   *See also* "DPlot" program and  
     Graphics  
 Polar coordinates, 80, 90–91, 93  
   converting, 84–85, 93  
 Polar mode, 80, 92, 93, 95, 97  
 Power  
   consumption, 257–258  
   curve, 240, 244  
   on and off, 18, 323  
 Powers. *See* Exponents  
 Precision,  
   full, 34, 36  
   internal, 3, 34, 247  
   integration. *See* Accuracy of  
     integration  
   of statistical data, 237  
   trigonometric, 255  
 Predicted value. *See* Forecasting  
 Present value, 192  
 Previous  
   contents of X-register. *See* Last x  
   menu level (**EXIT**), 21–22, 23, 25  
   menu row (**▲**), 23  
   program line (**▣** **BST**), 111, 114  
 Print annunciator, 20, 100, 256  
 Print functions, 101–102  
   in programs, 131  
 PRINT menu, 101, 102, 306  
 Printer, HP 82240A, 100, 103  
   character set, 105  
 Printer port, 101  
 Printing, 100–105  
   calculations (keystrokes), 102  
   speed (delay time), 103  
   double-wide, 103, 274  
   the LCD (*liquid crystal display*),  
     101, 158, 161, 162  
   lowercase letters, 103, 274  
   modes, 102, 274  
   names of variables and programs,  
     63, 101  
   off, 101, 324  
   on, 101, 325  
   a program, 104–105  
   a record of keystrokes and results,  
     102  
   storage registers, 64  
   the stack, 101  
   a variable, 63, 64, 101–102, 160  
   *See also* Flags that affect printing  
 Printing Is Disabled, 131,  
   286



PROB (*probability*) menu, 87, 307  
     combinations, 87  
     factorials, 87  
     gamma function, 88  
     permutations, 87  
     random number, 88  
     random number seed, 88  
 PROFF function, 101, 324  
 Program  
     catalog, 40, 69, 112, 149  
     clearing (deleting), 26, 119  
     -entry mode, 25, 109, 110,  
         111-112, 113, 114, 115, 120,  
         181, 279, 281  
     memory, 115, 272  
     names. *See* Program labels  
     output, 121, 128-132  
     pointer, 111-112  
     returns, 143-145, 286  
 Program labels, 116-117  
     branching to, 141-145, 145-148,  
         148-149  
     catalog, 112, 149  
     global, 116, 149  
     indirect branching, 142-143  
     local, 116-117, 148-149, 270  
     search order, 148-149, 270  
     unique, 116, 117  
 Program line numbers, 109  
     moving to, 111  
 Programmable menu, 145-148  
 Programming, 108-175  
     simple, 108-120  
     for the Solver, 179-182  
     for integration, 197-199  
     techniques, 141-165  
*Programming Examples and Techniques*  
     manual, 154, 175, 187, 239  
 Programs,  
     clearing, 26, 119, 120  
     editing. *See* Program-entry mode  
     executing. *See* Executing programs  
     printing, 104-105  
     testing, 102, 114-115  
 Prompting for input, 121-128, 129  
 PRON function, 101, 104, 279, 286,  
     325

Purging. *See* Clearing  
 P-R function (HP-41), 171

## Q

"QUAD" program, 173-174, 175  
 Quadratic formula, 172  
 Quality, 3  
 Questions, common, 254-256  
 QUIET function, 256, 275, 326  
 Quotation marks  
     for global labels, 116  
     typing, 296  
 Quotient. *See* Arithmetic

## R

Radians  
     angular mode (**RAD**), 80, 81, 93,  
         277, 281  
     to degrees (conversion), 82, 83  
 Radix, 34, 36, 276, 281  
 Rainfall, 229, 230, 232  
 Raising a number to a power, 78  
 Random number, 87, 88  
     seed, 88  
 Range error, 33, 275, 286  
     ignored, 237, 275, 281  
 Range of numbers, 33, 275  
     for base conversions, 248  
 RDN function (HP-41), 271  
 Real numbers, 43, 60  
     comparing, 151  
 Real results only, 94, 170, 278, 282  
 Rearranging the stack, 44-45  
 Recall arithmetic, 61  
     and LAST X, 61-62  
 Recalling data, 55-59, 61  
     into the Alpha register, 66, 133  
 Reciprocal, 78  
 Rectangular  
     coordinates, 84-85, 90-91  
     mode, 22, 80, 91  
 Redimensioning a matrix, 217  
 Reference material, 254-335

- Registers. *See* Stack registers or Storage registers
- Regression. *See* Curve fitting
- Remainder (modulo), 87
- Reordering the stack, 44–45
- Repair. *See* Service
- Replacing the batteries, 258–260
- Reserved
  - flags, 273, 280–282
  - variable names, 227
- Resetting the calculator, 262, 267
- Restoring the old value of a matrix element, 213
- Restricted Operation**, 286
- Results,
  - displaying, 128–129
  - intermediate, 31–32, 42
- Retrieving data. *See* Recalling data
- Return locations, 144
  - loss of, 145
- Reverse Polish Notation. *See* RPN
- Rigel Centaurus, 51
- Rolling the stack, 44, 328
- Root(s)
  - approximation, 188
  - of an equation, 172, 183
  - finder, 178
  - See also* Solver
- Roots, multiple, 183–186
- Rotating
  - the Alpha register, 135
  - a 36-bit number, 250, 251
- Rounding numbers, 3, 34, 86
- Row norm, 219
- Row sum, 220
- Rows in a matrix,
  - inserting and deleting, 214, 225
  - number of, 206, 208, 217
  - See also* Grow mode
- Rows in a menu, 23
- RPN (Reverse Polish Notation), 4, 42, 53
  - advantages, 32
- RTN function, 112, 143–145, 328
  - See also* Subroutines
- Run/Stop key (**[R/S]**), 113–114, 122, 126, 131, 145, 147, 152, 155, 156, 158, 159, 162–163, 170, 187, 201, 328
- Running programs. *See* Executing programs
- Running record, printing, 102, 114
- R-D function (HP-41), 171
- R-P function (HP-41), 171

## S

- “SAREA” program, 122, 126, 128
- Scalar arithmetic, 218
- Scientific display mode, 34, 35
- Selecting
  - a menu, 21–22
  - a mode. *See* Mode(s)
  - a nondecimal base, 245, 251
- Self-test, calculator, 261–262
- Service, 260–265
  - agreements, 265
  - centers, 263–264, Inside back cover
  - charge, 264
  - obtaining, 263–264
  - outside the United States, 264
- Shift (**[ $\square$ ]**), 18, 19, 20, 125, 168, 170
- Shipping, 264–265
- Short form local labels, 116, 149
- [ $\square$  SHOW]**, 36
  - Alpha register, 40
  - matrix, 207
  - nondecimal number, 246
  - program line, 246
- Showing full precision (**[ $\square$  SHOW]**), 36
  - nondecimal numbers, 246
- Sign bit, 248
- Sign of a number, 27, 248
- Sign Reversal**, 188, 286
- Significant digits, 36
- Simultaneous linear equations, 205, 220–223
  - calculating the unknowns, 221, 222
  - coefficient matrix (MATA), 220, 221–222, 227

- constant matrix (MATB), 220, 221–222, 227
- solution matrix (MATX), 220, 221–222, 227
- variables created for, 227
- Single-variable statistics, 229
- Sirius, 51–52
- SIZE function, 57, 64, 329
- Size Error, 286
- Small numbers. *See* Exponents of ten
- “SMILE” program, 130, 139
- Solve/Integ RTN Lost, 286
- Solve(Solve), 287
- Solver, 178–195
  - entering guesses (estimates), 178, 183–186, 189
  - $f(x) = 0$ , 179
  - halting, 187
  - how it works, 179, 186–188
  - interrupting, 187
  - math error, 187
  - maximum, 188, 284
  - minimum, 188, 284
  - programs (functions), 178, 179–182
  - using in a program, 189
  - restarting, 187
  - results, interpreting, 187–188
  - using, 178–183
  - variable menu, 125–126, 180
  - writing a program for, 179–182
  - See also* “DPlot” program
- SOLVER menu, 307
- Solving
  - flag, 278, 281
  - for an unknown variable, 178
  - a systems of linear equations, 221
- Speed of light,  $c$ , 51, 52
- Square, 78
- Square root, 78
- Square root of the sum of the squares. *See* Frobenius norm
- Stack,
  - arithmetic in, 28–33, 43, 45–48
  - clearing, 26, 43
  - copying data ( $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$ ), 46–47
  - data types, 43, 60, 90, 205
  - drop, 42, 45, 46
  - lift, 42, 45–46, 276, 281
  - memory, 43, 45, 270–271
  - printing, 101
  - registers, 43, 44, 48
  - registers as parameters (ST), 58–59, 73, 172
- Standard deviation, 231, 232
- Stat Math Error, 287
- STAT menu, 231, 240, 308
- Statistical data,
  - clearing, 26, 228
  - correcting ( $\boxed{\Sigma-}$ ), 232–233
  - entering ( $\boxed{\Sigma+}$ ), 228–230, 231, 237–238, 240, 275
  - limitations, 237, 275
  - in a matrix, 237–239, 242
  - in storage registers, 228, 233–237, 238–239, 243
  - one-variable, 229
  - two-variable, 228
  - See also* Summation coefficients
- Statistics, 228–244
  - correlation coefficient, 240, 243
  - HP-41, 168, 233
  - mean, 230, 231
  - predicted value. *See* Forecasting
  - registers. *See* Summation coefficients
  - standard deviation, 231, 232
  - weighted mean, 231
- Stepwise execution, 114
- Stopping
  - integration, 201
  - a program, 114
  - the Solver, 187
- Storage arithmetic, 61–62, 218
- Storage registers, 55, 57–58, 63–64
  - clearing, 26, 64
  - displaying, 128
  - editing, 235–237
  - making complex, 60, 98–99
  - making real, 99
  - managing, 63–64
  - number of, 57, 64
  - printing, 64, 102

- recalling data from, 58
- storing data into, 57
- viewing, 128, 235–237
- Storing, 55–59, 60
  - complex numbers, 98–99
  - elements in a matrix, 206, 208–209, **212–213**
  - matrices, 60, **208**
  - statistical data, 228–230
- Strings. *See* Alpha strings
- ST+, ST–, ST\*, and ST/ functions (HP-41), 172
- Submatrices, 226–227
  - getting, 226
  - putting, 226–227
- Submenus, 23–25
- Subroutines, 143–145
  - nested, 144
  - return locations, **144–145**, 286
- Subtraction. *See* Arithmetic
- Sum. *See* Arithmetic
- Summation coefficients, 228, **233–237**, 238
  - AllΣ mode, **233–234**, 277, 282
  - HP-41, 168
  - Linear mode, 233–234
  - location of, 234
  - number of, 168, **233–234**
- Support, customer, **254**, Inside back cover
- Swapping
  - rows in a matrix, 225
  - data in the X- and Y-registers ( $\langle xy \rangle$ ), 30, 33, **44–45**, 52–53
  - data in the X-register with another register or variable, 331
- System of linear equations. *See* Simultaneous linear equations

## T

- t*, time, 190
- T-register, 43, 45, 47, 58–59, 73, 187
  - automatic duplicating of, 47
- Tangent, 80

- Testing
  - bits in a number, 151, **250**
  - data type, 151
  - flags, 41, **150**, 273
  - a program, 102, **114–115**
- Temperature,
  - operating, 260
  - storage, 260
- Time value of money, 192–195
  - $\langle Too Big \rangle$ , **249**, 287
- TOP.FCN menu, 22, **23**, 308
- Trace printing, **102**, 114, 256
- Translating HP-41 programs. *See* HP-41 programs, enhancing
- Transposing a matrix, 219
- Trigonometry, 80–82
  - angular modes, 80
  - coordinate modes, 80
  - functions, 80–82
  - inverse (arc) functions, 81–82
- Troubleshooting, 260–262
- True/false test. *See* Do-if-true rule.
- Turning the calculator on and off, **18**, 323
- “TVM” program, 192–195
- Two’s complement, 246, **248**
- Two-number functions, 28, **30**, 77
  - with matrices, 218
- Two-variable statistics, 228
- Types of data. *See* Data types

## U

- Uncertainty of computation (integration), 202, **203**
- Underflow, 33
- Undoing. *See* Correcting mistakes
- Uniformly spaced single-variable statistics, 229
- Unit vector, 220
  - of a complex number, 86, 220
- Unquoted program labels, 116
- Upper limit of integration (ULIM), 196, 200, **201**, 204
- User memory. *See* Memory
- User keyboard (HP-41), 167

## V

$v_0$ , initial velocity, 190

Variable

of integration, 197, **200**

menu, **125–128**, 180, 198

*See also* Menu variables

Variables, 55, **56–57**, 62–63

in catalogs, 40, **62**

clearing, 26, **62**

creating, 56

displaying, 128–129

inputting, **121–124**, 125–128

managing, 62–63

names of, 56

as parameters, 71–72

recalling data from, 56–57

storing data into, **55–56**, 121–128

printing, **63**, 101

viewing, **128–129**, 132

Vector

arithmetic, 93–98, 218–219

cross product, 97–98, **220**

dot product, 94, 96, **220**

functions, 94, **220**

VIEW function, 104, **128**, 132, 274, 331

Viewing

the Alpha register, **40**, 129–131

full precision, 36

program lines, 111

the amount of available memory, **40**, 269–270

a variable or register, 128–129

“VOL” program, **180–183**, 189

## W

Warranty, 262–263

on service, 265

in the United Kingdom, 263

Weighted mean, 231

Where data can be stored, 56, **60**

Word size, 248–249

Wrap mode, 212, **213**

Wrap,

edge, **280**, 282

end, **280**, 282

Wrong function, correcting, 49–50

Wrong number(s), correcting, 49–50

## X

X-register, **43–51**, 55, 58–59, 73

clearing, 25–26, **48**

comparing with the Y-register, 151, 332

comparing with zero, 151, 332

exchanging with another register or variable, 331

exchanging with Y-register, 30, 33, **44–45**, 52–54

and integration, **202**, 203

and INPUT, 121–122

in the Matrix Editor, 211–213

for statistical data, 228–229

testing, 151, 332

x-value,

entering for statistics, **228–229**, 233, 238

forecasting, **240**, 243

XEQ function, 70, **112**

subroutine call, **143–145**

XOR, logical, **250**, 333

$X \leq 0?$  function (HP-41), 172

$X \leq Y?$  function (HP-41), 172

## Y

y-intercept, **240**, 244

Y-register, **43**, 45, 58, 59, 73

exchanging with X-register, 30, 33, **44–45**, 52–54

for statistical data, 228–229

y-value,

entering for statistics, **228–229**, 233, 238

forecasting, **240**, 243

“YEAR” program, 147

Yes, **149**, 151, 287

$y^x$ , 78



## Z

Z-register, 43, 45, 58, 59, 73

Zero, 25, 33, 121, 180

Zero of an expression (root), 186–188

## Special Characters

↗, 19, 20

☐, 19–20, 104, 257

((•)), 20

▼, 20, 23, 73

⊢ (append symbol), 130, 291

■ (bullet character) in a menu label,  
22

▶ (program pointer), 111, 113

... in the display, 40, 170, 289

Γ (gamma) function, 88

$f(x)$  menu, 309

\* function (HP-41), 172

/ function (HP-41), 172

+/- function, 27, 171

←, ↑, ↓, and → functions, 206, 209,  
212, 225, 335

% (percent), 37, 79

2's complement, 246, 248





## **Contacting Hewlett-Packard**

**For Information About Using the Calculator.** If you have questions about how to use the calculator, first check the table of contents, the subject index, and "Answers to Common Questions" in appendix A. If you can't find an answer in the manual, you can contact the Calculator Support department:

Hewlett-Packard  
Calculator Support  
1000 N.E. Circle Blvd.  
Corvallis, OR 97330, U.S.A.

(503) 757-2004  
8:00 a.m. to 3:00 p.m. Pacific time  
Monday through Friday

**For Service.** If your calculator doesn't seem to work properly, refer to appendix A to determine if the calculator requires service. The appendix also contains important information about obtaining service. If your calculator requires service, mail it to the Calculator Service Center:

Hewlett-Packard  
Calculator Service Center  
1030 N.E. Circle Blvd.  
Corvallis, OR 97330, U.S.A.  
(503) 757-2002

# Contents

---

## **Part 1: Basic Operation**

18	1: Getting Started
42	2: The Automatic Memory Stack
55	3: Variables and Storage Registers
67	4: Executing Functions
77	5: Numeric Functions
90	6: Complex Numbers
100	7: Printing

## **Part 2: Programming**

108	8: Simple Programming
121	9: Program Input and Output
141	10: Programming Techniques
166	11: Using HP-41 Programs

## **Part 3: Built-In Applications**

178	12: The Solver
196	13: Numerical Integration
205	14: Matrix Operations
228	15: Statistics
245	16: Base Operations

## **Part 4: Appendixes and Reference**

254	A: Assistance, Batteries, and Service
267	B: Managing Calculator Memory
273	C: Flags
283	D: Messages
288	E: Character Table
292	Menu Maps
310	Operation Index
336	Subject Index



**HEWLETT  
PACKARD**

**Reorder Number**  
**00042-90001**

00042-90054 English  
Printed in U.S.A. 3/89

Scan Copyright ©  
The Museum of HP Calculators  
[www.hpmuseum.org](http://www.hpmuseum.org)

Original content used with permission.

Thank you for supporting the Museum of HP  
Calculators by purchasing this Scan!

Please do not make copies of this scan or  
make it available on file sharing services.